

032911
47439 U.S. PTO



MICHAEL M. DE ANGELI, P.C.
ATTORNEY AT LAW
60 INTREPID LANE
JAMESTOWN, RHODE ISLAND 02835
(401) 423-3190

REGISTERED PATENT
ATTORNEY

ADMITTED TO BARS
OF PA & MD

NOT ADMITTED
IN RI

FAX: (401) 423-3191
E-MAIL: MDEANGE@COX.NET

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
RULE 60 APPLICATION

Atty. Dkt. PAICE201.DIV.10

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

This is a request for filing a **divisional** application under 37 CFR § 1.60 of pending prior application Serial No. 12/320,600 filed on January 29, 2009 entitled Hybrid Vehicles

Full Name of first joint inventor: Alex J. Severinsky

Residence: Washington, D.C. Citizenship: U.S.

Post Office Address: 4704 Foxhall Crescent, Washington D.C. 20007

Full Name of second joint inventor: Theodore Louckes (deceased)

Residence: Holly, Michigan Citizenship: U.S.

Post Office Address: 10398 Appomattox, Holly MI 48442

X Enclosed is a copy of the prior application as originally filed. I hereby verify that the attached papers are a true copy of the prior application Serial No. 12/320,600 as originally filed on January 29, 2009.

X The filing fee is calculated below: Claims as filed, less any claims canceled:

						LARGE ENTITY		
CLAIMS				Basic Filing Fee:		\$ 330		
Total	1	-	20	=	0	x	\$52	\$ 0
Indep.	1	-	3	=	0	x	\$220	0
								<hr/>
Search fee								\$540
Examination fee								\$220
Size fee								\$540
								<hr/>
Total Fee								\$1630

___ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge fees under 37 CFR § 1.16 and § 1.17 which may be required, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

___ Status as a "small entity" under 37 CFR 1.9 is claimed by way of the attached declaration.

___ A preliminary amendment is enclosed.

___ An information disclosure statement is enclosed.

X Cancel the following claims before calculating the filing fee:
1 - 15.

x A credit card authorization for the filing fee is enclosed.

___ Priority of application Serial No. _____ filed on in (country) _____ is claimed under 35 U.S.C. § 119.

a) ___ Certified copy is on file in prior application
Serial No. _____ filed _____.

b) ___ Certified copy filed herewith.

X Amend the specification by inserting the following before the first line thereof:

This is a **divisional** application of application Serial No. 12/320,600, filed January 29, 2009, which was a divisional application of Ser. No. 11/459,458, now patent 7,520,353, which was a divisional application of Ser. No. 10/382,577 filed March 7, 2003, now patent 7,104,347, which was a divisional application of Ser. No. 09/822,866 filed April 2, 2001, now patent 6,544,088, which was a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/264,817 filed March 9 1999, now patent 6,209,672, issued April 3, 2001, which in turn claimed priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/100,095, filed September 14, 1998, and was also a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/392,743 filed September 9, 1999, now patent 6,338,391 issued January 15, 2002, in turn claiming priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/122,296, filed March 1, 1999.

____ Transfer the drawings for the prior application to this application, and abandon said prior application as of the filing date accorded this application. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed for filing in the prior application file.

X New formal drawings are enclosed.

X The prior application is assigned of record to PAICE LLC via a document dated April 28, 2004 and recorded by the Patent and trademark Office as Reel 014546, Frame 0351.

X The original power of attorney in the prior application (filed in Ser. No. 09/822,866) is to Michael de Angeli, Reg. No. 27,869.

X Address all future communications to:

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

X The undersigned declares further that all statements made herein of his own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge

that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated:

3/25/11



Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

HYBRID VEHICLES

Inventors: Alex J. Severinsky
Theodore N. Louckes

Cross-Reference to Related Applications

5 This application is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/264,817, filed March 9, 1999, now U. S. patent 6,209,672, issued April 3, 2001, which in turn claims priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/100,095, filed September 14, 1998, and is also a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/392,743, filed September 9, 1999, which in turn claims priority from provisional application
10 Ser. No. 60/122,296, filed March 1, 1999.

Field of the Invention

15 This application relates to improvements in hybrid vehicles, that is, vehicles in which both an internal combustion engine and one or more electric motors are provided to supply torque to the driving wheels of the vehicle. More particularly, this invention relates to a hybrid electric vehicle that is fully competitive with presently conventional vehicles as regards performance, operating convenience, and cost, while achieving substantially improved fuel
20 economy and reduced pollutant emissions.

Discussion of the Prior Art

25 For many years great attention has been given to the problem of reduction of fuel consumption of automobiles and other highway vehicles. Concomitantly very substantial attention has been paid to reduction of pollutants emitted by automobiles and other vehicles. To a degree, efforts to solve these problems conflict with one another. For example, increased thermodynamic efficiency and thus reduced fuel consumption can be realized if an engine is
30 operated at higher temperatures. Thus there has been substantial interest in engines built of ceramic materials withstanding higher

combustion temperatures than those now in use. However, higher combustion temperatures in gasoline-fueled engines lead to increase in certain undesirable pollutants, typically NO_x.

Another possibility for reducing emissions is to burn mixtures of gasoline and ethanol ("gasohol"), or straight ethanol. However, to date ethanol has not become economically competitive with gasoline, and consumers have not accepted ethanol to any great degree. Moreover, to make an alternate fuel such as ethanol available to the extent necessary to achieve appreciable improvements in nationwide air quality and fuel conservation would require immense costs for infrastructure improvements; not only the entire nation's motor fuel production and delivery system, but also the vehicle manufacture, distribution, and repair system, would have to be extensively revised or substantially duplicated.

One proposal for reducing pollution in cities is to limit the use of vehicles powered by internal combustion engines and instead employ electric vehicles powered by rechargeable batteries. To date, all such "straight electric" cars have had very limited range, typically no more than 150 miles, have insufficient power for acceleration and hill climbing except when the batteries are substantially fully charged, and require substantial time for battery recharging. Thus, while there are many circumstances in which the limited range and extended recharging time of the batteries would not be an inconvenience, such cars are not suitable for all the travel requirements of most individuals. Accordingly, an electric car would have to be an additional vehicle for most users, posing a substantial economic deterrent. Moreover, it will be appreciated that in the United States most electricity is generated in coal-fired power plants, so that using electric vehicles merely moves the source of the pollution, but does not eliminate it. Furthermore, comparing the respective net costs per mile of driving, electric vehicles are not competitive with ethanol-fueled vehicles, much less with conventional gasoline-fueled vehicles. See, generally, Simanaitis, "Electric Vehicles",

Road & Track, May 1992, pp. 126-136; Reynolds, "AC Propulsion CRX", *Road & Track*, October 1992, pp. 126-129.

Brooks et al U.S. patent 5,492,192 shows such an electric vehicle; the invention appears to be directed to incorporation of antilock braking and traction control technologies into an otherwise conventional electric vehicle.

Much attention has also been paid over the years to development of electric vehicles including internal combustion engines powering generators, thus eliminating the defect of limited range exhibited by simple electric vehicles. The simplest such vehicles operate on the same general principle as diesel-electric locomotives used by most railroads. In such systems, an internal combustion engine drives a generator providing electric power to traction motors connected directly to the wheels of the vehicle. This system has the advantage that no variable gear ratio transmission is required between the engine and the wheels of the vehicle.

More particularly, an internal combustion engine produces zero torque at zero engine speed (RPM) and reaches its torque peak somewhere in the middle of its operating range. Accordingly, all vehicles driven directly by an internal combustion engine (other than certain single-speed vehicles using friction or centrifugal clutches, and not useful for normal driving) require a variable-ratio transmission between the engine and the wheels, so that the engine's torque can be matched to the road speeds and loads encountered. Further, some sort of clutch must be provided so that the engine can be mechanically decoupled from the wheels, allowing the vehicle to stop while the engine is still running, and to allow some slippage of the engine with respect to the drive train while starting from a stop. It would not be practical to provide a diesel locomotive, for example, with a multiple speed transmission, or a clutch. Accordingly, the additional complexity of the generator and electric traction motors is accepted. Electric traction motors produce full torque at zero RPM and thus can be

connected directly to the wheels; when it is desired that the train should accelerate, the diesel engine is simply throttled to increase the generator output and the train begins to move.

The same drive system may be employed in a smaller vehicle such as an automobile or truck, but has several distinct disadvantages in this application. In particular, and as discussed in detail below in connection with Figs. 1 and 2, it is well known that a gasoline or other internal combustion engine is most efficient when producing near its maximum output torque. Typically, the number of diesel locomotives on a train is selected in accordance with the total tonnage to be moved and the grades to be overcome, so that all the locomotives can be operated at nearly full torque production. Moreover, such locomotives tend to be run at steady speeds for long periods of time. Reasonably efficient fuel use is thus achieved. However, such a direct drive vehicle would not achieve good fuel efficiency in typical automotive use, involving many short trips, frequent stops in traffic, extended low-speed operation and the like.

So-called "series hybrid" electric vehicles have been proposed for automotive use, wherein batteries are used as energy storage devices, so that an internal combustion engine provided to power a generator can be operated in its most fuel-efficient output power range while still allowing the electric traction motor(s) powering the vehicle to be operated as required. Thus the engine may be loaded by supplying torque to a generator charging the batteries while supplying electrical power to the traction motor(s) as required, so as to operate efficiently. This system overcomes the limitations of electric vehicles noted above with respect to limited range and long recharge times. Thus, as compared to a conventional vehicle, wherein the internal combustion engine delivers torque directly to the wheels, in a series hybrid electric vehicle, torque is delivered from the engine to the wheels via a serially connected generator used as a battery charger, the battery, and the traction motor. However, energy transfer between

those components consumes at least approximately 25% of engine power. Further, such components add substantially to the cost and weight of the vehicle; in particular, an electric motor capable of providing sufficient torque to meet all expected demand, e.g., to allow reasonable performance under acceleration, during hill-climbing and the like, is rather heavy and expensive. Thus, series hybrid vehicles have not been immediately successful.

A more promising "parallel hybrid" approach is shown in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,566,717 and 3,732,751 to Berman et al. In Berman et al an internal combustion engine and an electric motor are matched through a complex gear train so that both can provide torque directly to the wheels, the vehicle being operated in several different modes. Where the output of the internal combustion engine is more than necessary to drive the vehicle ("first mode operation") the engine is run at constant speed and excess power is converted by a first motor/generator ("speeder") to electrical energy for storage in a battery. In "second mode operation", the internal combustion engine drives the wheels directly, and is throttled. When more power is needed than the engine can provide, a second motor/generator or "torquer" provides additional torque as needed.

Berman et al thus show two separate electric motor/generators separately powered by the internal combustion engine; the "speeder" charges the batteries, while the "torquer" propels the vehicle forward in traffic. This arrangement is a source of additional complexity, cost and difficulty, as two separate modes of engine control are required. Moreover, the operator must control the transition between the several modes of operation. Such a complex vehicle is unsuited for the automotive market. Automobiles intended for mass production can be no more complicated to operate than conventional vehicles, and must be essentially "foolproof", that is, resistant to damage that might be caused by operator error. Further, the gear train shown by Berman et al appears to be quite complex and difficult to manufacture economically. Berman et

al also indicate that one or even two variable-speed transmissions may be required; see, e.g., col. 3, lines 19 - 22 and 36 - 38 of patent 3,566,717, and col. 2, lines 53 - 55 of patent 3,732,751.

Lynch et al patent 4,165,795 also shows an early parallel hybrid drive. Lynch argues that maximum fuel efficiency can be realized when a relatively small internal combustion engine is provided, such that when the engine is operated at an efficient speed, it produces approximately the average power required over a typical mission. The example given is of an engine producing 25 hp maximum and 17 hp at its most efficient speed, about 2500 rpm. This is to be combined with an electric motor-generator of about 30 peak hp. This vehicle requires a variable-ratio transmission to achieve reasonable performance. It appears that the engine is to be run continuously, at a steady speed, with additional torque provided by the motor when needed and excess torque produced by the engine being used to charge the batteries. In a first embodiment, torque provided by the motor is transmitted to the drive wheels through the engine, while in a second embodiment their respective positions are reversed.

Nishida U.S. patent 5,117,931 shows a parallel hybrid vehicle where torque from an electric motor may be combined with torque from an internal combustion engine in a "torque transmission unit" comprising paired bevel gears and means for controlling the relative rates of rotation of the motor and engine, so that the motor can be used to start the engine, absorb excess torque from the engine (by charging a battery), or provide additional propulsive torque. A variable-speed transmission is coupled between the torque transmission unit and the propelling wheels. Both the torque transmission unit and the variable-speed transmission are complex, heavy, and expensive components, the use of which would preferably be avoided.

Helling U.S. patent 3,923,115 also shows a hybrid vehicle having a torque transmission unit for combining torque from an electric motor and an internal combustion engine. However, in

Helling the relative rates of rotation of the motor and engine input shafts are fixed; a flywheel is provided to store excess mechanical energy as well as a battery to store excess electrical energy. Albright, Jr. et al patent 4,588,040 shows another hybrid drive scheme using a flywheel in addition to batteries to store excess energy; various complicated mechanical connections are provided between the various components. Capacitors have also been proposed for energy storage; see Bates et al U.S. patent 5,318,142.

Fjällström U.S. patent 5,120,282 shows a parallel hybrid drive train wherein torque from two electric motors is combined with torque produced by an internal combustion engine; the combination is performed by a complex arrangement of paired planetary gearsets, and unspecified control means are alleged to be able to allow variation of road speed without a variable-ratio transmission.

Hunt U.S. Patent Nos. 4,405,029 and 4,470,476 also disclose parallel hybrids requiring complex gearing arrangements, including multiple speed transmissions. More specifically, the Hunt patents disclose several embodiments of parallel hybrid vehicles. Hunt indicates (see col. 4, lines 6 - 20 of the '476 patent) that an electric motor may drive the vehicle at low speeds up to 20 mph, and an internal combustion engine used for speeds above 20 mph, while "in certain speed ranges, such as from 15 - 30 mph, both power sources may be energized... Additionally, both power sources could be utilized under heavy load conditions." Hunt also indicates that "the vehicle could be provided with an automatic changeover device which automatically shifts from the electrical power source to the internal combustion power source, depending on the speed of the vehicle" (col. 4, lines 12 - 16).

However, the Hunt vehicle does not meet the objects of the present invention, as discussed in detail below. Hunt's vehicle in each embodiment requires a conventional manual or automatic transmission. See col. 2, lines 6 - 7. Moreover, the internal combustion engine is connected to the transfer case (wherein torque from the internal combustion engine and electric motor is combined)

by a "fluid coupling or torque converter of conventional construction". Col. 2, lines 16 - 17. Such transmissions and fluid couplings or torque converters are very inefficient, are heavy, bulky, and costly, and are to be eliminated according to one object of the present invention, again as discussed in detail below.

Furthermore, the primary means of battery charging disclosed by Hunt involves a further undesirable complexity, namely a turbine driving the electric motor in generator configuration. The turbine is fueled by waste heat from the internal combustion engine. See col. 3, lines 10 - 60. Hunt's internal combustion engine is also fitted with an alternator, for additional battery charging capability, adding yet further complexity. Thus it is clear that Hunt fails to teach a hybrid vehicle meeting the objects of the present invention - that is, a hybrid vehicle competitive with conventional vehicles with respect to performance, cost and complexity, while achieving substantially improved fuel efficiency.

Kawakatsu U.S. Patents Nos. 4,305,254 and 4,407,132 show a parallel hybrid involving a single internal combustion engine coupled to the drive wheels through a conventional variable-ratio transmission, an electric motor, and an alternator, to allow efficient use of the internal combustion engine. As in the Hunt disclosure, the engine is intended to be operated in a relatively efficient range of engine speeds; when it produces more torque than is needed to propel the vehicle, the excess is used to charge the batteries; where the engine provides insufficient torque, the motor is energized as well.

A further Kawakatsu patent, No. 4,335,429, shows a hybrid vehicle, in this case comprising an internal combustion engine and two motor/generator units. A first larger motor/generator, powered by a battery, is used to provide additional torque when that provided by the engine is insufficient; the larger motor-generator also converts excess torque provided by the engine into electrical energy, to be stored by the battery, and is used in a regenerative braking mode. The second smaller motor/generator is similarly used

to provide additional torque and additional regenerative braking as needed.

More particularly, the latter Kawakatsu patent asserts that a single electric motor sized to provide sufficient torque to propel the vehicle would not be capable of providing sufficient regenerative braking force; see col. 1, line 50 - col. 2 line 8. Accordingly, Kawakatsu provides two separate motor/generators, as noted; a separate engine starting motor is also provided. See col. 6, lines 22 - 23. In the embodiment shown, the larger motor/generator is connected to the wheel drive shaft, while the engine and the smaller motor/generator are connected to the wheels through a complex mechanism comprising three separately-controllable clutches. See col. 5, lines 50 - 62.

Numerous patents disclose hybrid vehicle drives tending to fall into one or more of the categories discussed above. A number of patents disclose systems wherein an operator is required to select between electric and internal combustion operation; for example, an electric motor is provided for operation inside buildings where exhaust fumes would be dangerous, and an internal combustion engine provided for operation outdoors. It is also known to propose a hybrid vehicle comprising an electric motor for use at low speeds, and an internal combustion engine for use at higher speed. The art also suggests using both when maximum torque is required. In several cases the electric motor drives one set of wheels and the internal combustion engine drives a different set. See generally Shea (4,180,138); Fields et al (4,351,405); Kenyon (4,438,342); Krohling (4,593,779); and Ellers (4,923,025).

Many of these patents show hybrid vehicle drives wherein a variable speed transmission is required, as do numerous additional references. A transmission as noted above is typically required where the internal combustion engine and/or the electric motor are not capable of supplying sufficient torque at low speeds. See Rosen (3,791,473); Rosen (4,269,280); Fiala (4,400,997); and Wu et al (4,697,660). Kinoshita (3,970,163) shows a vehicle of this general

type wherein a gas turbine engine is coupled to the road wheels through a three-speed transmission; an electric motor is provided to supply additional torque at low speeds.

For further examples of series hybrid vehicles generally as discussed above, see Bray (4,095,664); Cummings (4,148,192); Monaco et al (4,306,156); Park (4,313,080); McCarthy (4,354,144); Heidemeyer (4,533,011); Kawamura (4,951,769); and Suzuki et al (5,053,632). Various of these address specific problems arising in the manufacture or use of hybrid vehicles, or specific alleged design improvements. For example, Park addresses certain specifics of battery charging and discharge characteristics, while McCarthy shows a complex drive system involving an internal combustion engine driving two electric motors; the torque generated by the latter is combined in a complex differential providing continuously variable gear ratios. Heidemeyer shows connecting an internal combustion engine to an electric motor by a first friction clutch, and connecting the motor to a transmission by a second friction clutch.

Other patents of general relevance to this subject matter include Toy (3,525,874), showing a series hybrid using a gas turbine as internal combustion engine; Yardney (3,650,345), showing use of a compressed-air or similar mechanical starter for the internal combustion engine of a series hybrid, such that batteries of limited current capacity could be used; and Nakamura (3,837,419), addressing improvements in thyristor battery-charging and motor drive circuitry. Somewhat further afield but of general interest are the disclosures of Deane (3,874,472); Horwinski (4,042,056); Yang (4,562,894); Keedy (4,611,466); and Lexen (4,815,334); Mori (3,623,568); Grady, Jr. (3,454,122); Papst (3,211,249); Nims et al (2,666,492); and Matsukata (3,502,165). Additional references showing parallel hybrid vehicle drive systems include Froelich (1,824,014) and Reinbeck (3,888,325). U.S. Patent No. 4,578,955 to Medina shows a hybrid system wherein a gas turbine is used to drive a generator as needed to charge batteries. Of

particular interest to certain aspects of the present invention is that Medina discloses that the battery pack should have a voltage in the range of 144, 168 or 216 volts and the generator should deliver current in the range of 400 to 500 amperes. Those of skill in the art will recognize that these high currents involve substantial resistance heating losses, and additionally require that all electrical connections be made by positive mechanical means such as bolts and nuts, or by welding. More specifically, for reasons of safety and in accordance with industry practice, currents in excess of about 50 amperes cannot be carried by the conventional plug-in connectors preferred for reasons of convenience and economy, but must be carried by much heavier, more expensive and less convenient fixed connectors (as used on conventional starter and battery cable connections). Accordingly, it would be desirable to operate the electric motor of a hybrid vehicle at lower currents.

U.S. patent 5,765,656 to Weaver also shows a series hybrid wherein a gas turbine is used as the internal combustion engine; hydrogen is the preferred fuel.

U.S. Patent No. 4,439,989 to Yamakawa shows a system wherein two different internal combustion engines are provided, so that only one need be run when the load is low. This arrangement would be complex and expensive to manufacture.

Detailed discussion of various aspects of hybrid vehicle drives may be found in Kalberlah, "Electric Hybrid Drive Systems for Passenger Cars and Taxis", SAE Paper No. 910247 (1991). Kalberlah first compares "straight" electric, series hybrid, and parallel hybrid drive trains, and concludes that parallel hybrids are preferable, at least when intended for general use (that is, straight electric vehicles may be useful under certain narrow conditions of low-speed, limited range urban driving). Kalberlah then compares various forms of parallel hybrids, with respect to his Fig. 4, and concludes that the most practical arrangement is one in which an internal combustion engine drives a first pair of

wheels, and an electric motor the second; more particularly, Kalberlah indicates that mechanical combination of the torque from an internal combustion engine and an electric motor is impractical.

Gardner U.S. patents 5,301,764 and 5,346,031 follow Kalberlah's teachings, in that Gardner shows separately driving at least two pairs of wheels; one pair is driven by a first electric motor, and the second by a second electric motor or alternatively by a small internal combustion engine. Three different clutches are provided to allow various sources of drive torque to be connected to the wheels, and to a generator, depending on the vehicle's operation mode. The internal combustion engine is run continuously, and provides the driving torque when the vehicle is in a cruise mode; at other times it is used to charge the batteries powering the electric motors.

Bullock, "The Technological Constraints of Mass, Volume, Dynamic Power Range and Energy Capacity on the Viability of Hybrid and Electric Vehicles", SAE Paper No. 891659 (1989) provides a detailed theoretical analysis of electric vehicles in terms of the loads thereon, and a careful analysis of the various battery types then available. Bullock concludes that a vehicle having two electric motors of differing characteristics, driving the wheels through a variable-speed transmission, would be optimal for automotive use; see the discussion of Fig. 8. Bullock also suggests the use of an internal combustion engine to drive battery charging, but does not address combining the engine's torque with that from the motors; see pp. 24 - 25.

Further related papers are collected in Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Technology, volume SP-915, published by SAE in February 1992. See also Wouk, "Hybrids: Then and Now"; Bates, "On the road with a Ford HEV", and King et al, "Transit Bus takes the Hybrid Route", all in IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, (July 1995).

Urban et al U.S. patent 5,667,029 shows two embodiments of parallel hybrids; a first embodiment is shown in Figs. 1 - 9 and 11, and a second in Figs. 12 - 17. Both embodiments have numerous

common features, including similar operating modes. Referring to the first embodiment, an internal combustion engine provides torque to the road wheels or to a generator; two electric motors can provide torque to the road wheels, or charge batteries during regenerative braking. Torque from the engine and motors is combined at the input shaft to a variable-ratio transmission. Overrunning clutches are provided, e.g., to allow the engine's torque to be applied to the road wheels without also rotating the motors.

As indicated at col. 6, lines 25 - 54, certain transitions between various operating modes are made automatically, responsive to the position of the accelerator pedal; for example, if the operator does not depress the pedal beyond a given point, only the internal combustion engine is employed to propel the vehicle; if the operator depresses the pedal more fully, the electric motors are also energized. Other changes in the operational mode must be made by the operator directly; for example, the vehicle may be operated as a "straight electric" vehicle, e.g. for short duration trips, by the operator's making an appropriate control action. See col. 7, lines 49 - 56.

The Urban et al design appears to suffer from a number of significant defects. First, the internal combustion engine is stated to provide all torque needed to accelerate the vehicle to cruising speed under normal circumstances (see col. 5, lines 3 - 10), and also to propel the vehicle during cruising (see col. 6, lines 48 - 54). The electric motors are to be used only during rapid acceleration and hill-climbing; col. 5, lines 10 - 13. A 20 horsepower engine, operated through a continuously variable-ratio transmission and a torque converter, is stated to be adequate for this purpose. Such components are clearly complex and expensive; further, torque converters are notoriously inefficient. Moreover, using the internal combustion engine as the sole source of power for low-speed running would require it to be run at low speeds, e.g., at traffic lights, which is very inefficient and highly

polluting. (Various additional references suggest that excess torque can be used to charge batteries; if this were incorporated in the Urban system, the engine might be run at a reasonably efficient output level while the vehicle was stationary, but this would lead to high levels of noise and vibration. In any event Urban does not appear to consider this possibility.)

On the other hand, Urban does suggest that the vehicle can be operated as a "straight electric" under low-speed conditions, but this requires the operator to provide an explicit control input; this complexity is unacceptable in a vehicle intended to be sold in quantity, as would be required in order to reach Urban's stated goals of reduction of atmospheric pollution and reduced energy consumption. As noted, hybrid vehicle operation must be essentially "foolproof", or "transparent" to the user, to have any chance of commercial success.

Urban's second embodiment is mechanically simpler, employing but a single "dynamotor", through which torque is transmitted from the engine to the variable-ratio transmission, but suffers from the same operational deficiencies.

A second Urban et al patent, 5,704,440, is directed to the method of operation of the vehicle of the '029 patent and suffers the same inadequacies.

Various articles describe several generations of Toyota Motor Company hybrid vehicles, believed to correspond to that available commercially as the "Prius". See, for example, Yamaguchi, "Toyota readies gasoline/electric hybrid system", Automotive Engineering, July 1997, pp. 55 - 58; Wilson, "Not Electric, Not Gasoline, But Both", Autoweek, June 2, 1997, pp. 17 - 18; Bulgin, "The Future Works, Quietly", Autoweek February 23, 1998, pp. 12 and 13; and "Toyota Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", a Toyota brochure. A more detailed discussion of the Toyota vehicle's powertrain is found in Nagasaka et al, "Development of the Hybrid/Battery ECU for the Toyota Hybrid System", SAE paper 981122 (1998), pp. 19 - 27. According to the Wilson article, Toyota describes this vehicle as

a "series-parallel hybrid"; regardless of the label applied, its powertrain appears to be similar to that of the Berman patents described above, that is, torque from either or both of an internal combustion engine and an electric motor are controllably combined in a "power-split mechanism" and transmitted to the drive wheels through a planetary gearset providing the functionality of a variable-ratio transmission. See the Nagasaka article at pp. 19 - 20.

Furutani U.S. patent 5,495,906 describes a vehicle having an internal combustion engine driving a first set of wheels through a variable-ratio transmission and an electric motor driving a second set of wheels. The engine is apparently intended to be run continuously; at low speeds, it drives a generator to charge batteries providing energy to the motor, and at higher speeds the engine or both engine and motor propel the vehicle. In some circumstances the transmission may not be required; compare, for example, col. 3, lines 4 - 8 with col. 5, lines 59 - 64.

U.S. patent 5,842,534 to Frank shows a "charge depletion" control method for hybrid vehicles; in this scheme, the internal combustion engine is essentially used only when the state of the batteries is such that the vehicle cannot otherwise reach a recharging point. See col. 3, lines 50 - 55. In normal operation, the batteries are recharged from an external power source. Frank also discusses two-mode brake pedal operation, wherein mechanical brakes are engaged in addition to regenerative braking when the pedal is depressed beyond a preset point.

U.S. patent 5,823,280 to Lateur et al shows a parallel hybrid wherein the shafts of an internal combustion engine and first and second electric motors are all coaxial; the engine is connected to the first motor by a clutch, and the first motor to the second by a planetary gearset, allowing the speeds of the motors to be varied so as to operate them in their most efficient range. See col. 4, line 57 - col. 5, line 60.

U.S. patent 5,826,671 to Nakae et al shows a parallel hybrid

wherein torque from an internal combustion engine is combined with that from a motor in a planetary gearset; a clutch is provided therebetween. The specific invention relates to sensing of engine warmup conditions, so as to limit emission of unburnt fuel and thus lower emissions.

U.S. patent 5,846,155 to Taniguchi et al shows a parallel hybrid wherein torque from an internal combustion engine and a motor is again combined in a planetary gearset; the specific improvement appears to be the use of a continuously-variable transmission.

It will be appreciated by those of skill in the art that there are significant limitations inherent in the use of planetary gearsets as a means for connecting different sources, e.g., an internal combustion engine and an electric motor, to the drive wheels of a vehicle, namely, that unless the planetary gearset is effectively locked (anathematic to its use as a continuously-variable transmission, e.g., in the Toyota vehicle) it is capable of additive combination of shaft speeds, but not of output torque. Hence, the principal advantage of the parallel hybrid drivetrain, additive combination of the output torque of both the electric motor and the internal combustion engine, is only available when the planetary gearset is locked. This fact is acknowledged by Lateur, for example, at col. 6, line 27.

Additional disclosures of possible interest include U.S. patent 5,845,731 to Buglione et al; this patent issued December 8, 1998, and therefore is not necessarily available as a reference against the claims of the present application. The basic powertrain shown by Buglione et al includes an internal combustion engine 12, coupled through a first clutch 18 to a first electric motor 20, coupled to a second electric motor 26 through a second clutch 24; the wheels are (apparently; see col. 3, line 8) driven by the second motor 26. The overall hybrid operational scheme provided by Buglione et al is illustrated in Fig. 4. At low speeds one or both motors may be used to propel the vehicle, with the engine off,

idling, or running to drive one motor as a generator. During low-speed cruising the second motor propels the vehicle, while during high-speed cruising, the engine propels the vehicle. When acceleration is required at high speed, the engine and both motors may be used to propel the vehicle. Buglione et al also indicates that a variable-ratio transmission may be unnecessary, col. 3, line 9, and that the first motor can be used to start the engine, col. 4, lines 8 - 15.

U.S. patent 5,586,613 to Ehsani, showing an "electrically peaking hybrid" vehicle is also of interest. Ehsani's vehicle is shown in several embodiments; in each, an engine is apparently to be run continuously, with excess torque used to charge the batteries, and one or more motors used to provide additional propulsive torque when the engine's output torque is inadequate. A transmission is provided in some embodiments of the Ehsani vehicle. An embodiment involving two motors is shown in Fig. 7, and can be modified as discussed in the text at col. 9, lines 4 - 5. Fig. 7 itself shows driving a first set of wheels by a first "electric machine", i.e., a motor capable of operation as a generator. This drive arrangement is independent of a second drive arrangement, whereby a second set of wheels is driven by an engine connected through a first clutch to a second electric machine, connected to the second set of wheels by a second clutch. Ehsani suggests at col. 9, lines 4 - 5 that the drive shaft otherwise coupled to the first electric machine could also be driven by the engine. Although it is not made explicit that the first electric machine is to be retained, this seems likely; otherwise, the modified Fig. 7 embodiment would be the same as Ehsani's Fig. 1, modified to have all four wheels driven by a common driveshaft.

This application discloses a number of improvements over and enhancements to the hybrid vehicles disclosed in U.S. patent 5,343,970 (the "'970 patent"), to one of the present inventors, which is incorporated herein by this reference. Where differences are not mentioned, it is to be understood that the specifics of the

vehicle design shown in the '970 patent are applicable to the vehicles shown herein as well. Discussion of the '970 patent herein is not to be construed to limit the scope of its claims.

5 Generally speaking, the '970 patent discloses hybrid vehicles wherein a controllable torque transfer unit is provided capable of transferring torque between an internal combustion engine, an electric motor, and the drive wheels of the vehicle. The direction of torque transfer is controlled by a microprocessor responsive to the mode of operation of the vehicle, to provide highly efficient operation over a wide variety of operating conditions, and while providing good performance. The flow of energy - either electrical energy stored in a substantial battery bank, or chemical energy stored as combustible fuel - is similarly controlled by the microprocessor.

15 For example, according to the operating scheme of the hybrid vehicle disclosed in the '970 patent, in low-speed city driving, the electric motor provides all torque needed responsive to energy flowing from the battery. In high-speed highway driving, where the internal-combustion engine can be operated efficiently, it typically provides all torque; additional torque may be provided by the electric motor as needed for acceleration, hill-climbing, or passing. The electric motor is also used to start the internal-combustion engine, and can be operated as a generator by appropriate connection of its windings by a solid-state, microprocessor-controlled inverter. For example, when the state of charge of the battery bank is relatively depleted, e.g., after a lengthy period of battery-only operation in city traffic, the internal combustion engine is started and drives the motor at between 50 and 100% of its maximum torque output, for efficient charging of the battery bank. Similarly, during braking or hill descent, the kinetic energy of the vehicle can be turned into stored electrical energy by regenerative braking.

30 The hybrid drive train shown in the '970 patent has many advantages with respect to the prior art which are retained by the

present invention. For example, the electric drive motor is selected to be of relatively high power, specifically, equal to or greater than that of the internal combustion engine, and to have high torque output characteristics at low speeds; this allows the conventional multi-speed vehicle transmission to be eliminated. As compared to the prior art, the battery bank, motor/generator, and associated power circuitry are operated at relatively high voltage and relatively low current, reducing losses due to resistive heating and simplifying component selection and connection.

It can thus be seen that while the prior art, including the '970 patent, clearly discloses the desirability of operating an internal combustion engine in its most efficient operating range, and that a battery may be provided to store energy to be supplied to an electric motor in order to even out the load on the internal combustion engine, there remains substantial room for improvement. In particular, it is desired to obtain the operational flexibility of a parallel hybrid system, while optimizing the system's operational parameters and providing a substantially simplified parallel hybrid system as compared to those shown in the prior art, again as including the '970 patent.

As noted above, the present application is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/264,817, filed March 9, 1999 (the '817 application), which discloses and claims several distinct improvements over the hybrid vehicles shown in the '970 patent, as discussed in further detail below. Similarly, the present application is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/392,743, filed September 9, 1999 (the '743 application), which discloses and claims several distinct improvements over the hybrid vehicles shown in the '970 patent and the '817 application, as discussed in further detail below. The present application discloses and claims further improvements over the vehicles of the '817 and '743 applications.

As discussed in detail below, the '817 and '743 applications (which are not to be limited by this brief summary) disclose a new

"topology" for a hybrid vehicle, wherein an internal combustion engine and a first electric "starting" motor, which can be operated as a starter, to start the engine, a generator, to charge the battery bank responsive to torque from the engine or the wheels (i.e., during regenerative braking) or as a source of torque, to propel the vehicle, are connected to the road wheels of the vehicle through a clutch, so that the engine can be decoupled from the wheels during starting and battery charging, but can be connected to the wheels to propel the vehicle. A second "traction" motor is directly connected to the road wheels to propel the vehicle. The vehicle operating mode is determined by a microprocessor responsive to the "road load", that is, the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands. The '743 application further discloses that a turbocharger may be provided, and operated when needed to increase the torque output of the engine when torque in excess of its normally-aspirated capacity is required for more than a minimum time. The present application builds further on these concepts.

Koide U.S. patent 5,934,395 and Schmidt-Brücken U.S. patent 6,059,059 were addressed during the prosecution of the '817 application. Tsuzuki 6,018,198 and Werson 5,986,376 were also each applied against one claim. As indicated, the '817 application discloses a hybrid vehicle comprising a controller, a battery bank, an internal combustion engine, and two electric motors, a starting motor and a traction motor. The starting motor and engine are connected to the road wheels through a clutch, while the traction motor is connected directly and permanently to the road wheels for torque transmission therebetween, i.e., without a clutch therebetween. Koide does not show this "topology" for a hybrid vehicle; although Koide does show a hybrid vehicle having first and second motors along with an engine, the components are not connected as described. Specifically, in Koide, both motors and the engine are connected to the road wheels by way of a variable-ratio transmission and a clutch, while, as noted, in the '817 application only the combination of the engine and starting motor

is connected to the wheels through a clutch, while the traction motor is connected directly to the wheels for torque transmission therebetween, that is, without a clutch or variable-ratio transmission. More specifically, Koide's entire disclosure is premised on being able to vary the ratios between the torque-producing components of his system and the road wheels, in order that the engine can be smoothly started when needed. According to the '817 application, only the starter motor and engine need to be disconnectible from the wheels for smooth starting, while the traction motor can be connected to the road wheels at all times. This represents a substantial simplification with respect to the system shown by Koide.

The Schmidt-Brücken patent also fails to show the topology shown in the '817 application. Schmidt-Brücken shows an engine 1 in combination with a starting motor 7, connected to the road wheels through a first clutch 11, and a traction motor 19 connected to the road wheels through a second clutch 23.

The '817 and '743 applications also disclose that the vehicle operating mode is determined by a microprocessor responsive to the "road load", that is, the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands, i.e., that amount of torque required to propel the vehicle at a desired speed. The operator's input, by way of the accelerator or brake pedals, or a "cruise control" device, indicates that continuing at steady speed is desired, or that a change in vehicle speed is called for. For example, the operator's depressing the accelerator pedal signifies an increase in desired speed, i.e., an increase in road load, while reducing the pressure on the accelerator or depressing the brake pedal signifies a desired reduction in vehicle speed, indicating that the torque being supplied is to be reduced or should be negative. More particularly, it is important to note that the road load can vary between wide limits, independent of vehicle speed, and can be positive or negative, i.e., when decelerating or descending a hill, in which case the negative road load (that is, torque available at

the wheels in excess of that required to propel the vehicle) is usually employed to charge the battery bank.

More particularly, it is important to recognize that road load is not the same thing as vehicle velocity. Indeed, as noted, road load can be negative while vehicle velocity is positive, as during deceleration or descent. Moreover, widely differing road loads may be encountered during operation at the same velocity; for example, operation at 50 mph on a flat road may involve a road load of only 30 - 40% of the engine's maximum output torque (MTO), while accelerating from the same speed while climbing a hill may involve a road load of well over 100% of MTO.

By the same token, control of the vehicle's operating mode in response to monitoring of road load is not the same as controlling its operating mode in response to vehicle speed. Numerous prior art references, including the Koide and Schmidt-Brücken patents, teach the latter, i.e., indicate the vehicle operating mode should be controlled in response to vehicle speed. See Koide at col. 12, lines 45 - 48, and Schmidt-Brücken at col. 5, line 56 - col. 6 line 29. Neither Koide nor Schmidt-Brücken, nor any other reference of which the inventors are aware, recognizes that the desired vehicle operational mode should preferably be controlled in response to the vehicle's actual torque requirements, i.e., the road load. Doing so according to the invention provides superior performance, in terms of both vehicle response to operator commands and fuel efficiency, under the widely-varying conditions encountered in "real world" driving situations, than is possible according to the prior art.

Moreover, as set forth in the '817 and '743 applications, in order to provide maximum efficiency in use of fuel, it is essential to operate the internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle only under circumstances where the engine will be loaded so as to require at least 30% of its maximum torque output ("MTO") (it being understood throughout this specification and the appended claims that this 30% figure is arbitrary and can be varied). If the vehicle is controlled to shift into an engine-only mode whenever it

exceeds some arbitrary road speed, as in Koide and Schmidt-Brücken, it is apparent that the engine will be operated at various times when the road load is less than 30% of MTO, for example, during deceleration or during descents. Moreover, as noted above, the torque actually required can vary widely irrespective of vehicle speed. For example, 30% of MTO may be sufficient to maintain steady speed on a flat road, but 150% of MTO may be required for acceleration from the same speed. If the vehicle's operational mode is selected based solely on speed, as taught by Koide and Schmidt-Brücken, it will be incapable of responding to the operator's commands, and will ultimately be unsatisfactory.

By comparison, according to the invention of the '817 and '743 applications, and as further disclosed and claimed herein, the vehicle's operating mode -- that is, the selection of the source of torque needed to propel the vehicle -- is determined based on the amount of torque actually required. In this way the proper combination of engine, traction motor, and starting motor is always available. This apparently-simple point has evidently been missed entirely by the art.

Moreover, according to this aspect of the invention, the engine is used to propel the vehicle only when it is efficient to do so. This is in accordance with another aspect of the invention, wherein the engine is operated only at high efficiency, leading directly to improved fuel economy. For example, the engine is also used as needed to charge the battery bank, e.g., in low-speed city driving, where the battery bank may become depleted. The starter motor, which is operated as a generator in these circumstances, is accordingly sized so as to be able to accept at least 30% of MTO as input torque; the battery bank is likewise sized so as to be able to accept a corresponding amount of charging current. Therefore the engine is never operated at less than 30% of MTO, and is thus never operated inefficiently. Koide and Schmidt-Brücken, because they teach switching the vehicle's operational mode based on vehicle speed and not its torque requirements, would inherently

operate the engine under less efficient conditions.

Furutani patent 5,495,906 discloses selection of operating mode based on a combination of vehicle speed and "vehicle load"; see, e.g., col. 2, lines 39 - 47: "It is preferable that the running state detection means detects vehicle speed and vehicle load...[and] that the control means transfers the driving force generated by the engine to the power generator and changes the electric power generated by the power generator [i.e., more of the engine power is used to charge the batteries] in accordance with the vehicle load if the vehicle speed is the predetermined value or less. Moreover, it is preferable to change the predetermined value of the vehicle speed in accordance with the vehicle load." It thus appears that Furutani determines the vehicle operating state based on vehicle speed, although the change-over speed can be varied responsive to the vehicle load. Furutani's "vehicle load" thus apparently includes the torque required to charge the battery, as distinguished from applicants' "road load", i.e., the torque required to propel the vehicle. Even assuming that Furutani's "vehicle load", which is not defined, were suggestive of "road load" as used by applicants, Furutani clearly does not suggest determining the operating mode based on road load. More specifically, although Furutani recognizes a distinction between differing vehicle loads, and that the vehicle load can vary independent of vehicle speed, the vehicle operating mode is nonetheless selected based on vehicle speed; see col. 3, line 62 - col. 4, line 32. Instead of varying the operating mode of the vehicle based on road load, Furutani directs more or less of the engine's torque to battery charging; see col. 4, lines 24 - 32.

Frank 6,054,844 shows several embodiments of hybrid vehicles. In those where an engine is used to provide torque to the vehicle wheels, a continuously-variable transmission is employed, and the ratio R is considered in determining the response to be made to operator input, e.g., accelerator and brake pedal positions. Frank's control strategy is to operate the engine along a line of

optimal efficiency and use an electric motor to add to or subtract from the engine's output torque as appropriate. See col. 6, line 49 - col. 7, line 7 and col. 10, line 33 - col. 11, line 22. Frank thus does not suggest control of the vehicle operating mode responsive to road load.

Patent 6,018,694 to Egami et al shows a controller for a hybrid vehicle comprising an internal combustion engine and first and second "rotary electric units". Although the question is not free from doubt, it appears from a detailed review of Egami's disclosure that torque from the engine is not supplied directly to the road wheels, but instead is used to drive one of the rotary electric units as a generator, in turn supplying the second with current to provide torque for propelling the vehicle. Hence Egami does not show selection of the operational mode of the vehicle (that is, the determination whether propulsive torque is to be provided from the engine, one or both of the motors, or all three) in response to the road load, since it does not appear that propulsive torque is ever supplied from the engine to the wheels. Moreover, despite making reference to a "vehicle driving torque demand Mv^* ", which might be misunderstood to be equivalent to applicant's road load, Egami in fact does not determine the road load. More specifically, Mv^* is determined by consulting a "map", using "the vehicle speed V , the accelerator lift ACC , the brake state BRK , and the shift position SFT as the input parameters". See col. 22, lines 23 - 26. The same point, i.e., that the "vehicle driving torque demand Mv^* " is not equivalent to applicant's claimed road load, is made throughout Egami's extensive specification; see, for example, col. 10, lines 28 - 32 and col. 27, lines 58 - 65.

Deguchi patent 5,993,351 refers to decision-making regarding the vehicle mode of operation "based on the vehicle speed detected value and the required motive force detected value" (Abstract; see also col. 1, line 41); the latter might be misunderstood to be equivalent to the road load. Deguchi also states (col. 2, lines 7

- 9) that the vehicle "runs on the motor at times of low load and runs on the internal combustion engine at times of high load". However, Deguchi makes it clear that in fact the operational-mode decision is made "based on the accelerator aperture detected value θ which represents the required driving force of the vehicle and the detected vehicle speed" (col. 5, lines 19 - 21). The accelerator position and vehicle speed signals are the only relevant inputs to the vehicle controller shown in Fig. 2. Hence Deguchi does not show controlling the vehicle operating mode responsive to road load as defined by applicants.

Along generally similar lines, Boll patent 5,327,992 teaches a hybrid vehicle comprising a diesel engine and a motor on a common shaft, and intended to be operated such that the engine is only operated efficiently, i.e., under relatively high load. The torque required to overcome the "instantaneous tractive resistance" is determined responsive to the deflection of the accelerator pedal, i.e., in response to operator command (see col. 3, line 13 and line 35); when this is less than the minimum amount of torque that can be produced efficiently by the engine, the excess torque is used to power the motor as a generator. Boll also suggests that both the motor and engine can be used to propel the vehicle when needed, e.g., during acceleration, and that the vehicle can be operated in four different modes: (a) engine alone powering the vehicle; (b) motor only powering the vehicle, with the engine "generally switched off"; (c) engine and motor both powering the vehicle; and (d) engine powering vehicle, with excess torque powering motor in generator mode. Boll also teaches that a second motor can be provided, operable as a generator and then driven either by the engine directly or by exhaust gas, and that the resulting current can be used to charge the battery or to power the other motor.

Other references of interest are directed to the braking systems of hybrid vehicles, see for example German patent 19 05 641 to Strifler, discussing a method of control of a braking system providing both regenerative and mechanical braking, and the

powering of ancillary systems, such as power steering pumps, see U.S. patent 5,249,637 to Heidl. These references are discussed in further detail below with reference to improvements provided in these areas by the present application.

5

Objects of the Invention

10 It is an object of the invention to provide an improved hybrid electric vehicle realizing substantially increased fuel economy and reduced pollutant emissions as compared to present day internal combustion and hybrid vehicles while suffering no significant penalty in performance, operating convenience, cost, complexity, or weight, which can be operated efficiently by an operator accustomed to conventional vehicles without special training, and which does not require modification of the existing infrastructure developed over the years to support conventional vehicles.

15 More specifically, it is an object of the invention to provide such an improved vehicle that operates on fuel now widely available and uses batteries already well understood and widely available, so that the operator need not learn new driving techniques, deal with new fuel supply arrangements, nor be obliged to be attentive to maintenance of batteries employing complex new technologies.

20 It is a more particular object of the present invention to provide an improved series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle wherein an internal combustion engine and two separately-controlled electric motors can separately or simultaneously apply torque to the driving wheels of the vehicle, controlled to realize maximum fuel efficiency at no penalty in convenience, performance, or cost.

25 It is a further object of the invention to provide a series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle comprising two electric motors together providing output power equal to at least 100 percent of the rated output power of the internal combustion engine, and more preferably up to about 150 - 200 percent thereof, so that the engine operates under substantially optimum conditions in order to realize substantial fuel economy and reduced emission of

undesirable pollutants in operation.

More particularly, it is an object of the invention to provide a series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle wherein the internal combustion engine is sized to efficiently provide the average power required for operation at moderate and highway speeds, with two)or more) separately-controlled electric motors together sized to deliver the additional power needed for acceleration and hill climbing.

Still another object of the invention is to provide a series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle wherein the electric motor and battery charging circuits operate at no more than about 30 - 50 amperes continuous current (although significantly greater currents may flow for short periods, under peak load conditions), whereby resistance heating losses are greatly reduced, and whereby inexpensive and simple electrical manufacturing and connection techniques can be employed.

It is a more specific object of the present invention to provide a hybrid drive system for vehicles that does not require the controllable torque-transfer unit shown in the '970 patent, while providing the functional advantages of the hybrid vehicle shown in the '970 patent.

It is a more specific object of the invention to employ the control flexibility provided by the improved hybrid drive train of the invention to allow starting of the engine at comparatively high RPM, while controlling the fuel/air mixture supplied during starting, throttling the engine, and providing a preheated catalytic converter, minimizing emission of unburned fuel and further improving fuel economy.

It is a more specific object of the invention to employ the control flexibility provided by the improved hybrid drive train of the invention to allow employment of a motor producing substantially constant torque up to a base speed, and substantially constant power thereafter, as the engine starting motor, so that torque produced thereby can also be used to propel the vehicle.

In addition to the above objects of the invention, which are similar to those listed in the '817 and '743 applications, the invention of the present continuation-in-part application has as objects the broadening of the useful ranges of loading of vehicles according to the invention, e.g., to provide highly efficient hybrid operation for a vehicle that may weigh 7,000 pounds empty but which can be loaded to weigh 10,000 pounds or more, and may be expected to pull a trailer also weighing 10,000 pounds or more.

A further object of the present invention is to provide further improvements in methods of control of internal combustion engines for hybrid vehicles, to obtain very efficient use of fuel.

Another object of the present invention is to provide an optimal HVAC system for hybrid vehicles.

Still a further object of the invention is to provide a braking system for hybrid vehicles including regenerative braking that provides optimal operator feedback despite changes in operation responsive to the state of charge of the battery bank.

Other aspects and objects of the invention will become clear as the discussion below proceeds.

Summary of the Invention

As discussed above, the '970 patent discloses hybrid vehicles wherein a controllable torque transfer unit is provided capable of transferring torque between an internal combustion engine, an electric motor, and the drive wheels of the vehicle. See Figs. 3 - 11 thereof. The direction of torque transfer is controlled by a microprocessor responsive to the mode of operation of the vehicle, to provide highly efficient operation over a wide variety of operating conditions, and while providing good performance. The flow of energy - either electrical energy stored in a substantial battery bank, or chemical energy stored as combustible fuel - is similarly controlled by the microprocessor.

According to one aspect of the invention of the '817 and '743 applications, which is also employed according to the present

continuation-in-part application, the controllable torque-transfer unit shown in the '970 patent is eliminated by replacing the single electric motor shown therein by two separate motors, both operable as generators and as traction motors when appropriate. See Figs. 3 and 4 hereof. As in the '970 patent, an internal combustion engine is provided, sized to provide sufficient torque to be adequate for the range of cruising speeds desired, and is used for battery charging as needed. The internal combustion engine is connected to the drive wheels by a clutch operated by the microprocessor responsive to its selection of the vehicle's mode of operation in response to evaluation of the road load, that is, the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands and input commands provided by the operator of the vehicle. A relatively high-powered "traction" motor is connected directly to the output shaft of the vehicle; the traction motor provides torque to propel the vehicle in low-speed situations, and provides additional torque when required, e.g., for acceleration, passing, or hill-climbing during high-speed driving.

According to the invention of the '817 and '743 applications, a relatively low-powered starting motor is also provided, and can be used to provide torque propelling the vehicle when needed. This second motor is connected directly to the internal combustion engine for starting the engine. Unlike a conventional starter motor, which rotates an internal combustion engine at low speed (e.g., 60 - 200 rpm) for starting, necessitating provision of a rich fuel/air mixture for starting, the starter motor according to the invention spins the engine at relatively high speeds, e.g., 300 - 600 rpm, for starting; this allows starting the engine with a much less fuel-rich fuel/air mixture than is conventional, significantly reducing undesirable emissions and improving fuel economy at start-up. A catalytic converter provided to catalytically combust unburnt fuel in the engine exhaust is preheated to an effective working temperature before starting the engine, further reducing emissions.

In the embodiment discussed in detail, the starting motor is connected directly to the engine, and this combination is connected to the traction motor by a clutch for transfer of torque; the output shaft of the traction motor is then connected to the road wheels of the vehicle. In other embodiments, the engine/starting motor combination may be connected to a first set of road wheels through a clutch, with the traction motor connected to another set of road wheels directly; in a further embodiment, plural traction motors may be provided. In each case, the engine is controllably disconnected from the road wheels by control of the clutch. Engagement of the clutch is controlled by the microprocessor, e.g., controlling an electrical or hydraulic actuator as part of controlling the state of operation of the vehicle in response to the road load.

For example, during low-speed operation, the clutch will be disengaged, so that the engine is disconnected from the wheels; the vehicle is then operated as a "straight" electric car, i.e., power is drawn from the battery bank and supplied to the traction motor. Should the batteries become relatively depleted (e.g., become discharged to 50% of full charge), the starter motor is used to start the internal combustion engine, which then runs at relatively high torque output (e.g., at least about 30% of its maximum torque), for efficient use of fuel, and the starting motor is operated as a high-output generator to recharge the battery bank.

Similarly, when the operator calls for more power than available from the traction motor alone, e.g., in accelerating onto a highway, the starter motor starts the internal combustion engine; when it reaches an engine speed at which it produces useful torque, the clutch is engaged, so that the engine and starter motor can provide additional torque. As noted above, the engine is rotated at relatively high speed for starting, so that the engine rapidly reaches a useful speed.

As in the '970 patent, the engine is sized so that it provides sufficient power to maintain the vehicle in a range of suitable

highway cruising speeds, while being operated in a torque range providing good fuel efficiency; if additional power is then needed, e.g., for hill-climbing or passing, the traction and/or starter motors can be engaged as needed. Both motors can be operated as generators, e.g., to transform the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical power during descent or deceleration. Also as in the '970 patent, the peak power of the two motors together at least equals the rated power of the engine, as is necessary to provide good performance without employment of a variable-speed transmission or the equivalent.

In each of these aspects of the operation of the vehicle, and as in the '970 patent, the operator of the vehicle need not consider the hybrid nature of the vehicle during its operation, but simply provides control inputs by operation of the accelerator and brake pedals. The microprocessor determines the appropriate state of operation of the vehicle based on these and other inputs and controls the various components of the hybrid drive train accordingly.

It is also within the scope of the invention to operate one or both of the motors at differing rotational speeds than the engine, so that each can be optimized for the demands thereon. More specifically, motors can in general be made smaller if they can be operated at relatively high RPM. Motors operating at up to 9000 - 18,000 RPM appear appropriate for the present application. However, operating the internal combustion engine at this speed would likely lead to undesirable levels of noise and vibration, and might constrain its performance characteristics in an undesirable manner. Accordingly, for example, the starter motor might drive the engine through a pinion geared to a larger toothed flywheel, as conventional. Similarly, it might be desirable to provide the traction motor as a relatively high-speed unit, driving the road wheels through a chain, belt, or gear reduction unit. The starter motor may be configured as a "faceplate" or "pancake" motor, essentially forming the flywheel of the engine, and rotating at

engine speed, while the traction motor is a much higher speed induction motor connected to the vehicle driveshaft by a chain drive reduction unit. It is also within the scope of the invention, as noted above, to operate the engine and the two motors at the same speed when the clutch is engaged, avoiding intermediate gear trains or like mechanical components and the attendant cost, complexity, weight, audible noise, and frictional losses occasioned by their use.

Other improvements provided according to the invention include providing the batteries in two series-connected battery banks, with the vehicle chassis connected to the batteries at a central point, between the banks. This "center-point-chassis" connection reduces the voltage between various circuit components and the vehicle chassis by half, significantly reducing the electrical insulation required and simplifying such issues as heat-sinking of power semiconductors used in the inverter circuitry. Providing dual battery banks and dual electric motors, as above, also provides a degree of redundancy, permitting certain component failures without loss of vehicle function.

In the preferred embodiment, both the traction and starting motors are AC induction motors of four or more phases and the accompanying power circuitry provides current of more than three, preferably five, phases, allowing the vehicle to function even after failure of one or more components. These motors, and the inverter/chargers driving them, should be chosen and operated such that the motors have torque output characteristics varying as a function of rpm as illustrated in Fig. 14 of the '970 patent; that is, the motors should produce substantially constant torque up to a base speed and should produce substantially constant power at higher speeds. The ratio of the base to maximum speed can vary between about 3 to 1 and about 6 to 1. By comparison, the series-wound DC motors conventionally used as engine starting motors provide very high torque, but only at very low speeds; their torque output drops precipitously at higher speeds. Such conventional

starter motors would be unsatisfactory in the present system.

During substantially steady-state operation, e.g., during highway cruising, the control system operates the engine at varying torque output levels, responsive to the operator's commands. The range of permissible engine torque output levels is constrained to the range in which the engine provides good fuel efficiency. Where the vehicle's torque requirements exceed the engine's maximum efficient torque output, e.g., during passing or hill-climbing, one or both of the electric motors are energized to provide additional torque; where the vehicle's torque requirements are less than the minimum torque efficiently provided by the engine, e.g., during coasting, on downhills or during braking, the excess engine torque is used to charge the batteries. Regenerative charging may be performed simultaneously, as torque from the engine and the vehicle's kinetic energy both drive either or both motors in generator mode. The rate of change of torque output by the engine may be controlled in accordance with the batteries' state of charge.

The vehicle is operated in different modes, depending on its instantaneous torque requirements, and the state of charge of the battery, and other operating parameters. The mode of operation is selected by the microprocessor in response to a control strategy discussed in detail below; the values of the sensed parameters in response to which the operating mode is selected may vary depending on recent history, or upon analysis by the microprocessor of trips repeated daily, and may also exhibit hysteresis, so that the operating mode is not repetitively switched simply because one of the sensed parameters fluctuates around a defined setpoint.

None of the implementations of the invention shown in the '970 patent or the '817 and '743 applications include a conventional multi-speed transmission between the motors and engine and the road wheels, and it was stated that a desirable aspect of the invention was to avoid such transmissions, so that the rotational speeds of the two motors and the engine were fixed with

respect to one another, and to the speed of the road wheels. However, it now appears that in some circumstances a two-speed transmission may be desired in some cases to broaden the range of utility of the vehicles of the invention (principally to extend
5 their load-carrying capabilities) while still providing highly efficient operation, and to include such a two-speed transmission is accordingly part of the invention of the present continuation-in-part application. Such a two-speed transmission could be operated infrequently as a two-speed "range selector", or could be
10 operated essentially as a conventional automatic transmission, that is, be repetitively shifted during acceleration, upon "kick-down" and the like.

More specifically, it is of great present interest to optimize the hybrid power train of the invention for use with
15 relatively heavy vehicles, such as vans, pickup trucks and "sport-utility vehicles" (SUVs). Such vehicles have become increasingly popular in recent years, despite their generally poor fuel mileage; it would be highly desirable to provide vehicles with generally similar load-carrying abilities and performance with better fuel
20 economy. Still more particularly, heretofore large classes of such vehicles have not been subject to certain emission regulations; however, such regulations are expected to take effect shortly. Accordingly, it would be very desirable to provide such vehicles with hybrid power trains that will allow their owners to enjoy the
25 load-carrying and performance abilities of the existing vehicles with improved fuel economy and reduced emissions.

One of the aspect of SUVs and similar vehicles that must be considered in design of a suitable hybrid powertrain is that their owners use them to carry and tow widely-varying loads. That is, a
30 conventional SUV might weigh 5,500 pounds, and might typically be used during the week to transport a 140 pound person, up to 300 pounds of children, and 50 pounds of groceries. However, on the weekend the family might load the vehicle with half a ton of camping gear and the like and set off for the mountains towing a

7,500 pound trailer. The vehicle must provide adequate acceleration, passing, and hill-climbing performance in both uses. In order to have sufficient power at times of maximum loading, the vehicle is grossly overpowered under all different circumstances; that is, only when the vehicle is laden to near-maximum capacity and pulling up a long hill does the engine deliver near maximum torque for any length of time. Under all other circumstances, it is run very inefficiently, as noted in connection with Figs. 1 and 2 (reproduced herein from the '970 patent).

An important aspect of the invention as described by the present continuation-in-part application as well as the predecessor applications and the '970 patent lies in controlling the operation of the internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle so that it is only operated at high efficiency, that is, only when is it loaded to require a substantial fraction e.g., 30% of its maximum torque output. That is, the engine is never run at less than 30% of maximum torque output ("MTO"). As discussed in the '970 patent and the '817 application, this can be accomplished by sizing the engine so that it can efficiently propel the vehicle unassisted at highway speeds; if additional torque is required for passing or hill-climbing, the traction motor is operated. Application Ser. No. 392,743 further adds the idea of providing a turbocharger, controlled by the microprocessor only to operate when torque in excess of the engine's rated normally-aspirated maximum torque output (MTO) is needed for an extended period of time, for example in towing a trailer. By employing the turbocharger only when actually needed, many of the drawbacks inherent in conventional turbocharger uses are eliminated. Typically the turbocharger may be sized such that the engine provides up to 150% of MTO when turbocharged.

According to one aspect of the invention of the present continuation-in-part application, the range of efficient use of the hybrid vehicle of the invention is further broadened by providing a two-speed transmission between the engine and road wheels, so as

to allow variation in the overall gear ratio and therefore vary the amount of torque available at the wheels. As noted above, this could be a manually- or automatically-operated "range shifting" gearbox akin to those presently provided on SUVs and the like, to allow shifting into a "low range", for example, when a heavy trailer is be towed, or could be operated similarly to a conventional multispeed transmission, that is, to provide a sequence of effective overall gear ratios each time the vehicle is accelerated.

A further improvement made according to the present continuation-in-part application has to do with the braking system. As noted above, the '970 patent (as well as numerous other prior art references) disclose regenerative braking, that is, employing the microprocessor to control the operation of inverter/chargers connected between the motor and battery bank so that when the operator desires to slow the vehicle, its momentum is used to drive the motor in generator mode, charging the battery. There are certain limitations on this as a method of vehicle braking, which must be addressed by any useful vehicle. In particular, a hydraulic braking system of generally conventional design must be provided for several reasons: first, for safety, in the event that the regenerative system fails for any reason; second, to provide braking in the event the battery bank is fully charged and cannot accept further charge (since overcharging is highly detrimental to battery life); and to provide braking when regenerative braking is not available, e.g., when at a standstill. The present application discloses certain improvements in hydraulic braking systems desired to optimize their design for use with hybrid vehicles, as well as a mechanism providing optimized brake "feel" to the driver, regardless whether conventional, regenerative, or both braking systems are in use.

The present application also discloses certain problems inherent in application of conventional vehicles' heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems to hybrid vehicles, and

describes preferred solutions to these problems.

A further improvement according to the present invention includes the provision of an auxiliary 12 volt supply system, allowing the hybrid vehicle of the invention to "jumpstart" another
5 vehicle, or likewise to be jumpstarted as might be necessary after a long hiatus, and to allow use of conventional 12 volt accessories, such as radios and other electronic items.

The present application also discloses further useful modifications and enhancements to the hybrid vehicles of the
10 predecessor applications.

The above and still further objects, features and advantages of the present invention will become apparent upon consideration of the following detailed description of a specific embodiment thereof, especially when taken in conjunction with the accompanying
15 drawings, wherein like reference numerals in the various figures are utilized to designate like components.

Brief Description of the Drawings

The invention will be better understood if reference is made
20 to the accompanying drawings, in which:

Fig. 1 is a plot of output power versus rotational speed (RPM) for a typical internal combustion engine, illustrating the relative fuel consumption of the engine as used in a conventional automobile in gallons/horsepower-hour;

25 Fig. 2 is a similar plot describing operation of a relatively small internal combustion engine used in the present invention under circumstances similar to those depicted in Fig. 1;

Fig. 3 shows a schematic diagram of the principal components of a first embodiment of the hybrid vehicle drive system according
30 to the invention;

Fig. 4 shows a block diagram of the principal components of the drive system of the invention in a second embodiment, differing in certain mechanical arrangements from that of Fig. 3, and illustrating various control signals provided in both embodiments;

Fig. 5 shows a partial schematic diagram of the battery bank, inverter, and motor circuitry;

5 Fig. 6 is a diagram illustrating differing modes of vehicle powertrain operation, plotted on a three dimensional chart, illustrating that the mode of vehicle operation is a function of the state of charge of the battery bank, the instantaneous road load, and time;

10 Fig. 7, comprising Figs. 7 (a)-(c), and extending over two sheets, is a timing diagram showing road load, engine torque output, the state of charge of the battery bank, and engine operation as functions of time, thus illustrating a typical control strategy employed during low-speed city driving, highway cruising, and extended high-load driving;

15 Fig. 8, comprising Figs. 8 (a)-(d), are diagrams indicating the flow of torque and of energy among the components of the hybrid powertrain of the invention, in various modes of operation;

Fig. 9 is a simplified flow chart of the algorithm employed by the microprocessor to implement the control strategies provided by the vehicle according to the invention;

20 Fig. 9(a) is a flow chart of an engine starting subroutine employed in the flowchart of Fig. 9;

Fig. 9(b) is an alternate version of one of the steps of the flowchart of Fig. 9, implementing a modification to the vehicle control strategy;

25 Fig. 9(c) is an alternate version of another of the steps of the flowchart of Fig. 9, similarly implementing a modification to the vehicle control strategy;

30 Fig. 10 illustrates the preferred torque versus speed characteristics of the electric starting and traction motors, and of the internal combustion engine;

Fig. 11 is a schematic diagram similar to Fig. 3, illustrating an alternative embodiment of the hybrid vehicle powertrain according to the invention, wherein the engine is provided with a turbocharger which is controllably operable, so as to be employed

only when needed;

Fig. 12 is a three-dimensional diagram comparable to Fig. 6, showing the modes of operation of the turbocharged hybrid vehicle of Fig. 11;

Fig. 13 is a timing diagram similar to Fig. 7, again comprising Figs. 13(a) - (c), extending over two sheets, and illustrating typical operation of the turbocharged hybrid vehicle of Fig. 11;

Fig. 14 is a schematic diagram similar to Figs. 3 and 11, illustrating a further alternative embodiment of the hybrid vehicle powertrain according to the invention, wherein a second traction motor is connected to a second set of road wheels, providing a particularly convenient way of providing four-wheel drive;

Fig. 15 is a schematic diagram of the preferred brake system of a hybrid vehicle according to the invention; and

Fig. 16 is a is a schematic diagram of the preferred heating, ventilation and air conditioning system of a hybrid vehicle according to the invention.

Description of the Preferred Embodiments

Referring specifically to Fig. 1, which is reproduced here from the '970 patent for convenience, curve 10 represents the output power versus engine speed (RPM) of a typical spark ignition gasoline-fueled internal combustion engine as used with an automatic transmission in a typical sedan of 3,300 pounds. As can be seen, the maximum engine power available is about 165 horsepower at about 5,000 RPM. Also shown in Fig. 1 by the curve labeled "Large Car Average Power Requirements" are the average power requirements of such a vehicle. Points C, S, and H on this curve show average fuel consumption in city, suburban, and highway driving, respectively; in particular, point C shows that the average power required in typical city driving is less than 5 hp. Point S shows that the average power consumed in suburban driving is 10 hp, and point H shows that the power needed for steady-speed

highway driving is only about 30 hp. Thus, the vehicle is vastly overpowered at all times except during acceleration or hill-climbing.

5 Fig. 1 also includes dashed-line curves indicating the relative fuel consumption of the engine. As can be seen, reasonable fuel efficiency, that is, at least about 105 percent relative fuel consumption (100% being ideal), is reached only when the engine is operated at between about 2,000 and 4,000 RPM, and when producing between about 75 and 150 horsepower. Fig. 1 thus indicates that the
10 typical internal combustion engine is operated with reasonable efficiency only when producing between about 50 and about 90% of its maximum output power. The typical automobile only requires such substantial power under conditions of extreme acceleration or hill climbing.

15 Accordingly, it will be appreciated that the typical engine is operated efficiently only during relatively brief intervals; more specifically, at lower power outputs, losses due to friction and pumping consume larger fractions of the engine's total torque, so that a lower fraction is available to propel the vehicle. As can
20 be seen, during typical highway driving, shown by point H, the relative fuel consumption is on the order of 190 percent of that required during the most efficient operation of the engine. The situation is even worse in suburban driving, where the relative fuel consumption is nearly 300 percent of the most efficient value,
25 and in city driving, where the relative fuel consumption is almost 350 percent of that required at most efficient operation.

30 Fig. 1 thus demonstrates that an internal combustion engine having sufficient horsepower for adequate acceleration and hill climbing capability must be so oversized with respect to the loads encountered during most normal driving that the engine is grossly inefficient in its consumption of fuel. As noted, Fig. 1 further shows that only about 30 horsepower is needed to cruise on the highway even in a relatively large car.

Fig. 2 (again reproduced from the '970 patent for convenience)

is similar to Fig. 1, and illustrates the operational characteristics of the same 3,300 pound car if driven by a relatively small engine having a maximum horsepower rating of about 45 horsepower at 4,000 RPM. The power requirement of the vehicle during highway cruising, shown by point H on the curve marked "Large Car Average Power Requirements", is in the center of the most efficient region of operation of the engine. However, even with this small engine thus optimized for highway cruising, there is a substantial gap between the "Engine Operating Power" curve and the Average Power Requirement curve 14. That is, even this small engine produces substantially more power at low RPM than needed for city driving (point C) or for suburban driving (point S). Accordingly, even with a small engine sized appropriately for highway cruising, substantial inefficiencies persist at lower speeds. Moreover, of course, such a vehicle would have unsatisfactory acceleration and hill climbing ability. Therefore, the answer is not simply to replace large internal combustion engines with smaller internal combustion engines.

The prior art recognizes that there are substantial advantages to be gained by combining the virtues of a gasoline or other internal combustion engine with those of an electric motor running from a battery charged by the internal combustion engine. However, the prior art has failed to provide a solution which is directly price- and performance-competitive with vehicles now on the market; moreover, in order that such a vehicle can be commercially successful, it must also be no more complex to operate than existing vehicles.

As indicated above, "straight" electric vehicles, that is, vehicles having electric traction motors and batteries requiring recharge at the end of each day's use, do not have sufficient range and require too much time to recharge to fully replace conventional automobiles. Further, the operational costs of such vehicles are not competitive with internal combustion vehicles operated on fuels derived from renewable resources such as ethanol, and are even less

competitive with gasoline-fueled automobiles.

5 A first type of series hybrid vehicles, involving a gasoline engine driving a generator charging a battery powering an electric traction motor, are limited in acceleration and hill climbing ability unless the electric motor is made very large, costly, and bulky. The alternative series hybrid approach, involving a transmission between a relatively smaller electric motor and the wheels to provide the torque needed to accelerate quickly, loses the virtue of simplicity obtained by elimination of a multi-speed transmission. These vehicles fail to realize the advantages provided by the parallel hybrid system in which both an internal combustion engine and an electric motor provide torque to the wheels as appropriate.

10 However (apart from the '970 patent) the prior art relating to parallel hybrid vehicles fails to disclose a system sufficiently simple for economical manufacture. The art further has failed to teach the optimum method of operation of a parallel hybrid vehicle. Moreover, the art relating to parallel hybrids (again, apart from the '970 patent) does not teach the appropriate operational parameters to be employed, relating to the relative power outputs of the internal combustion engine and the electric motor; the type of electric motor to be employed; the frequency, voltage, and current characteristics of the motor/battery system; the proper control strategy to be employed under various conditions of use; and combinations of these.

20 As shown in the '970 patent with reference to Figs. 1 and 2 thereof, and again above, typical modern automobiles operate at very low efficiency, due principally to the fact that internal combustion engines are very inefficient except when operating at near peak torque output; this condition is only rarely met. (The same is true, to greater or lesser degree, of other road vehicles powered by internal combustion engines.) According to an important aspect of the invention of the '970 patent, substantially improved efficiency is afforded by operating the internal combustion engine

only at relatively high torque output levels, typically at least 35% and preferably at least 50% of peak torque. When the vehicle operating conditions require torque of this approximate magnitude, the engine is used to propel the vehicle; when less torque is required, an electric motor powered by electrical energy stored in a substantial battery bank drives the vehicle; when more power is required than provided by either the engine or the motor, both are operated simultaneously. The same advantages are provided by the system of the present invention, with further improvements and enhancements described in detail below.

According to one aspect of the invention of the '970 patent, the internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle is sized to supply adequate power for highway cruising, preferably with some additional power in reserve, so that the internal combustion engine operates only in its most efficient operating range. The electric motor, which is substantially equally efficient at all operating speeds, is used to supply additional power as needed for acceleration and hill climbing, and is used to supply all power at low speeds, where the internal combustion engine is particularly inefficient, e.g., in traffic.

As indicated above, this application discloses certain modifications, improvements, and enhancements of the hybrid vehicles shown in U.S. patent 5,343,970; where not otherwise stated, the design of the vehicle of the present invention is similar to that shown in the '970 patent. Components commonly numbered in this application and the '970 patent are functionally similar, with detail differences as noted. The advantages of the system shown in the '970 patent with respect to the prior art are provided by that of the present invention, with further improvements provided by the latter, as detailed herein.

In the system of the '970 patent, torque from either or both the engine and motor is transferred to the drive wheels of the vehicle by a controllable torque-transfer unit. This unit also allows torque to be transferred between the motor and engine, for

starting the engine, and between the wheels and motor, for regenerative battery charging during deceleration of the vehicle. This unit, while entirely practical, comprises gears for power transfer, which are inevitably a source of audible noise and frictional losses. According to one aspect of the present invention, the controllable torque-transfer unit is eliminated. Instead, two electric motors are provided, each separately controlled by a microprocessor controller responsive to operator commands and sensed operating conditions.

In this connection, it will be understood that the terms "microprocessor" and "microprocessor controller" are used interchangeably throughout the present application, and it is to be further understood that these terms as used herein include various types of computerized control devices not always referred to as "microprocessors" per se, such as computers themselves incorporating microprocessors, digital signal processors, fuzzy logic controllers, analog computers, and combinations of these. In short, any controller capable of examining input parameters and signals and controlling the mode of operation of the vehicle according to a stored program, as discussed below in detail, is considered to be a "microprocessor" or "microprocessor controller" as used herein. Furthermore, the electronic fuel injection and electronic engine management devices shown in Figs. 3 and 4 as separate elements might also be integrated within the "microprocessor" or "microprocessor controller" as described herein.

Fig. 3 of the present application shows a first embodiment of the present invention, while Fig. 4, discussed below, shows a second embodiment illustrating certain alternative mechanical arrangements; overall the two embodiments are very similar, and functionally they are substantially identical. Fig. 11, also discussed below, illustrates a further embodiment, and Fig. 14 incorporates still further improvements.

In the Fig. 3 embodiment, a traction motor 25 is connected

directly to the vehicle differential 32, and thence to the road wheels 34. A starting motor 21 is connected directly to the internal combustion engine 40. The motors 21 and 25 are functional as motors or generators by appropriate operation of corresponding inverter/charger units 23 and 27, respectively, connected between the motors and battery bank 22. At present, essentially conventional lead-acid batteries are preferred for battery bank 22, since these are widely available and well understood. More advanced batteries may be used if and when they become widely available and economically competitive.

Motors 21 and 25 are controllably connected for torque transfer by a clutch 51, mechanically interlocking the shafts 15 and 16 of motors 21 and 25 respectively. As discussed further below in connection with Fig. 4, microprocessor (" μ P") 48 is provided with signals indicative of the rotational speeds of shafts 15 and 16, and controls operation of engine 40, motor 21, and motor 25 as necessary to ensure that the shafts are rotating at substantially the same speed before engaging clutch 51. Accordingly, clutch 51 need not necessarily be an ordinary automotive friction clutch (as illustrated schematically in Fig. 1), as conventionally provided to allow extensive relative slipping before the shafts are fully engaged. More particularly, as slipping of clutch 51 is not required to propel the vehicle initially from rest, as is the case in conventional vehicles, clutch 51 need not allow for extensive slipping when being engaged. In some cases it may be satisfactory to provide clutch 51 as a simple self-aligning mechanical interlock (as shown in Fig. 4), wherein positive mechanical connection is made between the shafts 15 and 16 upon engagement. Such a mechanical interlock is much simpler and less expensive than a friction clutch. In either case, clutch 51 is operated by microprocessor 48, e.g., through a known electric or hydraulic actuator 53, together with the other components of the system, in accordance with the operational state of the vehicle and the operator's input commands.

5 The respective positions of motor 21 and engine 40 with respect to clutch 51, motor 25, and wheels 34 could be reversed as compared to their positions in Figs. 3 and 4 without affecting the function of the system, although as engine 40 would then require torque transmitting connection at both ends of its crankshaft, some additional complexity would result.

10 As shown in Fig. 4, shaft encoders 18 and 19 may be mounted on the shafts 15 and 16 of starting motor 21 and traction motor 25, respectively, to provide signals to microprocessor 48 indicative of the relative rotational speeds of the shafts, and their respective rotational positions. Such shaft encoders are well-known and commercially available. Alternatively, signals indicative of the rotational speeds of the shafts may be derived from the inverter control signals, in accordance with well-known principles of control of "sensorless" motor drives (see, for example, Bose, 15 "Power Electronics and Variable Frequency Drives", IEEE, 1996). However, provision of encoders 18 and 19 will allow better low-speed torque characteristics of motor 21 and 25, and thus reduction in cost.

20 Thus being provided with signals indicative of the rotational speeds of shafts 15 and 16, microprocessor 48 controls operation of engine 40, motor 21, and motor 25 as necessary to ensure that the shafts are rotating at substantially the same speed before engaging clutch 51; therefore, clutch 51 need not be an ordinary automotive friction clutch (as illustrated schematically in Fig. 3), as conventionally provided to allow extensive slipping before the shafts are fully engaged. According to this aspect of the invention, and particularly if microprocessor 48 is made capable of ensuring that shafts 15 and 16 bear a desired relative angular relationship, clutch 51 instead may be a simple, relatively inexpensive self-aligning mechanical interlock (as illustrated 25 schematically in Fig. 4), wherein positive mechanical connection is made between the shafts 15 and 16 upon engagement.

30 Fig. 4 also shows additional signals provided to

microprocessor 48 in both the Fig. 3 and the Fig. 4 embodiments. These include operator input commands, typically acceleration, direction, deceleration, and "cruise mode" commands, as shown. The acceleration and deceleration commands may be provided by position-sensing encoders 71 and 72 (Fig. 3) (which could be configured as rheostats, Hall-effect sensors, or otherwise) connected to microprocessor 48 by lines 67 and 68, to inform the microprocessor of the operator's commands responsive to motion of accelerator and brake pedals 69 and 70 respectively. The microprocessor monitors the rate at which the operator depresses pedals 69 and 70 as well as the degree to which pedals 69 and 70 are depressed. The operator may also provide a "cruise mode" signal, as indicated, when a desired cruising speed has been reached. The microprocessor uses this information, and other signals provided as discussed herein, in accordance with the operational strategy discussed in detail below in connection with Figs. 6 - 9, to properly control operation of the vehicle according to the invention by appropriate control signals provided to its various components.

For example, suppose the vehicle has been operated in city traffic for some time, that is, under battery power only. Typically the operator will only depress the accelerator pedal 69 slightly to drive in traffic. If the operator then depresses accelerator pedal 69 significantly farther than he or she had, for example, the prior few times acceleration was required, this may be taken as an indication that an amount of torque that can efficiently be provided by engine 40 will shortly be required; microprocessor will then initiate the sequence whereby starting motor 21 will be used to start engine 40.

Upon initiation of the engine starting sequence, a heater 63 (Fig. 3) will first be used to preheat a catalytic converter 64 provided in the engine exhaust system 62, so that any fuel that is not combusted during starting and subsequent running of the engine 40 will be catalytically combusted, reducing emission of

undesirable pollutants. A temperature sensor 102 is preferably provided, so as to ensure the engine is not started until the catalytic material is heated to effective working temperature. As noted above, engine starting is preferably performed with the engine turning at a higher speed than is conventional, so that the fuel/air ratio need only be slightly (e.g., 20%) richer than stoichiometric. As a result, only very limited amounts of pollutants are emitted during engine starting. By comparison, in conventional vehicles, a very significant fraction of the total pollutants emitted during any given trip are emitted during the first 30 - 60 seconds of operation, due to the extremely rich mixtures normally supplied during starting, and to the ineffectiveness of the catalyst until it has been heated by the exhaust.

If the operator depresses the pedal 69 rapidly, indicating an immediate need for full acceleration, the preheating step may be omitted; however, a preferable alternative may be to allow the traction and starting motors to be driven at or slightly beyond their rated power, providing adequate torque, for a short time sufficient to allow the catalyst to be warmed and the engine started.

Similarly, if the operator depresses the brake pedal 70 relatively gently, all braking may be provided by regenerative charging of the batteries; if the operator instead presses aggressively on brake pedal 70, and/or presses brake pedal 70 beyond a predetermined point, both mechanical and regenerative braking will be provided. Mechanical braking is also provided on long downhills when the batteries are fully charged, and in case of emergency. Further aspects of the preferred brake system of the hybrid vehicles of the invention are added by the present continuation-in-part application, and are discussed below.

In addition to engine and starting motor speed and traction motor speed, monitored by shaft encoders 18 and 19 as discussed above, battery voltage, battery charge level, and ambient

temperature are also either monitored directly or derived from monitored variables. In response to these inputs, and the operator inputs, microprocessor controller 48 operates a control program (see the high-level flowchart of an exemplary control program provided as Fig. 9), and provides output control signals to engine 40, by commands provided to its electronic fuel injection unit (EFI) 56 and electronic engine management system (EEM) 55, and to starting motor 21, clutch 51, traction motor 25, inverter/charger units 23 and 27, and other components.

As indicated in Fig. 4, the control signals provided to inverter/chargers 23 and 27 by microprocessor 48 allow control of the current (represented as I), of the direction of rotation of the motor 25 (represented as +/-), allowing reversing of the vehicle, and of the frequency of switching (represented as f), as well as control of operation of the motors 21 and 25 in motor or generator mode. Inverter/chargers 23 and 27 are separately controlled to allow independent operation of motors 21 and 25. Inverter/charger operation is discussed further below in connection with Fig. 5.

As noted above, the Figs. 3 and 4 embodiments of the system of the invention differ in certain mechanical arrangements, intended to illustrate variations within the scope of the invention, and Fig. 4 also provides more detail concerning the specific control signals passing between various elements of the system.

Referring to the differing mechanical arrangements, it will be observed that in Fig. 3 the shafts of motors 21 and 25 are illustrated as coaxial with that of engine 40; this is the simplest arrangement, of course, but would require the engine 40 and starter motor 21 to rotate at the same speed at all times, and at the same speed as traction motor 25 when clutch 51 is engaged. As noted above, it may be preferable to design motors 21 and 25 to have maximum speeds of 9000 - 15,000 rpm, so that they could be made smaller, lighter, and less costly than slower-rotating motors. However, it is envisioned that a preferred maximum speed for

engine 40 is 6000 rpm, as internal combustion engines running at substantially higher speeds wear rapidly and tend to have limited torque at low speed, and because higher frequency engine noise and vibration can also be difficult to absorb. It is within the scope of the invention to provide the motors coaxial with the engine shaft, as illustrated in Fig. 3, but to provide a planetary gearset(s) between the shafts of either or both of traction motor 25 and starting motor 21 and the output shaft to permit differing engine and motor speeds. Further alternatives to this aspect of the invention are again added by the present continuation-in-part application, and are discussed below.

Fig. 4 illustrates an alternative construction, also permitting differing engine and motor speeds. In this case, the output shaft of starting motor 21 is shown connected to that of engine 40 by spur gears 52, and traction motor 25 is connected to the output shaft 55 by chain drive indicated at 54. Numerous other arrangements will occur to those of skill in the art. However, in each case there is no variable-ratio transmission between the sources of torque -- that is, the motors 21 and 25, and the engine 40 -- and the road wheels 34. Again, further alternatives to this aspect of the invention are added by the present continuation-in-part application, and are discussed below.

It is also within the scope of the invention to connect the traction motor to one set of wheels, and to connect the combination of the engine 40 and starting motor 21 to another set of wheels through clutch 51, thus providing a four-wheel drive vehicle with differing power sources for the alternate pairs of wheels. In this embodiment, the torque from the traction motor 25 is effectively combined with that from engine 40 (and from starting motor 21, when used as a source of propulsive torque) by the road surface, rather than by mechanical connection, as in the Figs. 3 and 4 embodiment. A further alternative would be to provide a complete system as in Fig. 3 driving one pair of road wheels, and a separate traction motor driving a second pair of road wheels.

Both embodiments are within the scope of the invention, and the control strategy is essentially the same as to both. See Fig. 14 and the related text below for further discussion.

5 Other elements of the system as illustrated in Figs. 3 and 4 are generally as discussed in the '970 patent, including supply of fuel 36 from tank 38, air filter 60, and throttle 61.

10 Control of engine 40 by microprocessor 48 is accomplished by way of control signals provided to electronic fuel injection (EFI) unit 56 and electronic engine management (EEM) unit 55, responsive to throttle operation; preferably, the throttle in turn is operated electronically responsive to the operator's depression of the accelerator pedal. Control of starting of engine 40, and using either or both of starting motor 21 and traction motor 25 as motors, providing propulsive torque, or as generators, providing recharging current to battery bank 22, is accomplished by microprocessor 48 by way of control signals provided to inverter/charger units 23 and 27.

15 Under deceleration, for example, during descents, or as needed for braking, or when the engine's instantaneous torque output exceeds the vehicle's current torque requirements, either or both of motors 21 and 25 are operated as generators, providing regenerative recharging of battery bank 22. Fig. 7, discussed below, illustrates this aspect of the operation of the vehicle of the invention in further detail.

20 Thus, as indicated above, when microprocessor 48 detects a continued operator requirement for additional power, such as during transition from slow-speed to highway operation, or by measuring the rate at which the operator depresses accelerator pedal 69, engine 40 is started using starter motor 21 and brought up to speed before clutch 51 is engaged, to ensure a smooth transition. As cruising speed is reached (as determined by monitoring the operator's commands), power to traction motor 25 (and to starter motor 21, if also used to accelerate the vehicle) is gradually reduced. Provision of the clutch 51 and separate starter motor 21,

as compared to using the single traction motor to start engine 40 while simultaneously accelerating the vehicle, that is, as in the '970 patent, simplifies the control arrangements somewhat.

5 In one possibly preferred embodiment, both motors 21 and 25 and clutch 51 may be provided in a single sealed housing, possibly bathed in oil for cooling and protection from dust and the like. It is also known to control auxiliary motors, such as conventional starter motors, to absorb or add torque to that provided by an associated internal combustion engine, to damp out vibration caused by fluctuation of the torque provided by the engine; doing so
10 herein using either or both of motors 21 and 25 is within the scope of the invention, and is simplified by virtue of the direct connection of the engine 40 to the drive wheels through motors 21 and 25 according to the invention.

15 Provision of the clutch 51 and separate starter motor 21, also allows another important improvement to be provided according to the present invention, namely starting engine 40 at high speed, e.g., about 300 -600 rpm, as compared to the 60 - 200 rpm starts conventionally provided. As is generally known in the art (see
20 Simanaitis, "What goes around comes around", *Road & Track*, November 1998, p. 201) high-rpm starting allows substantial elimination of the usual necessity of providing a fuel-rich air/fuel mixture to start engine 40, reducing emission of unburned fuel and improving fuel economy at start-up, particularly from cold.

25 More particularly, in conventional low-rpm starts, a rich mixture comprising up to on the order of 6 to 7 times the stoichiometric amount of fuel is provided, to ensure that some fraction of the fuel is in the vapor phase, as only fuel in the vapor phase can be ignited by a spark. Most of the excess fuel
30 condenses as liquid on the cold cylinder walls, and thus does not burn efficiently, if at all, and is immediately emitted unburned. By comparison, at high starting speeds according to the invention, turbulence in the combustion chamber is sufficient to ensure the presence of vapor, so that a near-stoichiometric mixture, typically

including only 1.2 times the stoichiometric amount of fuel, can be provided to engine 40 during the starting phase. The avoidance of rich mixtures at starting significantly reduces emission of unburned fuel - since most of the fuel provided to a conventional engine at starting is immediately exhausted unburnt - and provides some improvement in overall fuel efficiency.

Furthermore, as noted above, whenever possible - that is, whenever the engine is started except when immediate full torque is required by the operator - a catalytic converter 64 is preheated to an effective working temperature of at least about 350° C before starting the engine, to prevent even this relatively small emission of unburned fuel.

Thus, the primary consideration in selecting the torque of starting motor 21 is that it be capable of rotating the engine 40 at about 300 - 600 rpm for starting, and that it be capable of accepting at least about 30% of the engine's maximum torque output when operated as a generator, so that the engine can be efficiently employed when charging the battery bank during extended low-speed operation; the main consideration in specification of the torque of engine 40 is that it provides sufficient power for highway cruising while being operated at high efficiency, i.e., that its maximum power output be sufficient to cruise in a range of desired cruising speeds; and the principal consideration defining the power required of the traction motor 25 is that it be sufficiently powerful to provide adequate acceleration in combination with the engine 40 and starting motor 21. Stated differently, the total power available provided by all of these torque-producing components should be at least equal to and preferably exceeds the peak power provided by the internal combustion engines of conventional vehicles of similar intended use, both as measured at the wheels. Moreover, as set forth in the '970 patent, the total torque provided by motors 21 and 25 should be at least equal to that produced by engine 40, in order to provide adequate low-speed performance under motor alone, and

without necessity of a variable-ratio transmission.

At the same time, motors 21 and 25 are also sized to be capable of recovering almost all of the vehicle's kinetic energy when operated as generators in the regenerative braking mode. A particularly high fraction of the vehicle's kinetic energy can be recovered during low-speed operation; as compared to high-speed operation, where air resistance and road friction consume a relatively large fraction of the total energy required, in low speed operation much energy is lost by conventional vehicles as heat released during braking.

Given the above considerations, the following are typical power specifications for the engine 40, starting motor 21 and traction motor 25 of a 3000 pound vehicle having performance approximately equivalent to that of a "mid-size" sedan of United States manufacture. It should be understood that in these specifications, reference is made to the rated power produced continuously by the engine, not to the rated peak power of the motors, as is generally conventional in the art. Further, the motors are specified assuming the direct-drive embodiment of Fig. 3; if the motors run at higher speeds, their ratings would be determined accordingly.

Engine 40: 40 to 50 horsepower at 6000 rpm

Starting motor 21: 10 - 15 horsepower at approximately 1500 rpm and higher speeds

Traction motor 25: 50 - 75 horsepower from 1500 to 6000 rpm.

The same starting motor would be satisfactory for a larger, 4000 pound sedan, but the engine would typically provide 70 - 90 horsepower at 6000 rpm and the traction motor 75 - 100 horsepower.

In both cases, the total power available from the electric motors together should equal, and preferably exceeds, the maximum power available from the engine.

In the hybrid vehicle of the invention, which as noted does not require a complex, heavy, and costly variable-ratio transmission, these components would provide acceleration much

superior to that of typical similarly-sized automobiles of United States manufacture, together with far better fuel economy and substantially reduced emission of pollutants. It will be apparent that these specifications may vary over relatively wide ranges depending on the intended use of the vehicle of the invention, and should not be construed to limit the scope of the invention.

As indicated above, in the preferred embodiment, both the starting and traction motors are AC induction motors, although other types may also be employed. These motors, and the inverter/chargers controlling them in response to control signals from the microprocessor (as discussed further below), should be chosen and operated such that the motors have torque output characteristics varying as a function of rpm as illustrated by curve A in Fig. 10. That is, the motors are operated by the inverter/chargers, in response to control signals from the microprocessor, so as produce constant torque up to a base speed C, typically 1500 rpm for a motor having a top speed of 6000 rpm, as employed in the direct-drive embodiment of Fig. 3, and should produce constant power at higher speeds; accordingly, the torque drops off at speeds above the base speed C, as shown. The ratio of the base to maximum speed, 4 : 1 in this example, can vary between about 3 to 1 and about 6 to 1. This torque output characteristic essentially allows the vehicle of the invention to provide quite acceptable performance, especially acceleration, without the weight, complexity and cost of a variable-ratio transmission.

By comparison, the series-wound DC motors conventionally used as automotive engine starting motors provide very high torque, but only at very low speeds; their torque output drops precipitously at higher speeds. Such conventional starter motors would be unsatisfactory in the present system.

Fig. 10 also shows the torque curve of a typical internal combustion engine at B; as noted, the torque is zero at zero rpm, so that a clutch allowing slippage is required to allow the engine to move the vehicle from rest. Fig. 10 shows at D typical curves

for torque as measured at the wheels of a vehicle propelled by a typical internal combustion engine driving the vehicle through a four-speed transmission, used to provide additional torque at low speeds; the vertical spaces between sections of curve D represent changes in gear ratio, that is, the vehicle will be shifted to move between the sections of curve D. As shown by Fig. 10, the desired torque characteristics of the starting and traction motors discussed above allow the vehicle of the invention to provide low-speed performance comparable to or better than a conventional vehicle, while eliminating the necessity of a variable-ratio transmission. However, as discussed further below, it is within the invention of the present continuation-in-part application to extend the load-carrying capabilities of the hybrid vehicle of the invention by also providing a variable-ratio, e.g., two-speed, transmission, where not excluded by the appended claims. This should not be necessary with respect to passenger cars.

The ratio between the base speed and maximum speed of the motors as used according to the invention is thus comparable to the ratio between the lowest and highest gears of a conventional transmission; for passenger cars, the latter ratio is typically between 3 and 4 : 1, so that the engine's torque is relatively well matched to the road load over a reasonable range of road speeds.

As discussed above, while it is within the scope of the invention to operate the motors 21 and 25 and the internal combustion engine 40 at the same maximum speed, so that no gearing is required to couple these elements, it is presently preferred that at least traction motor 25 have a maximum speed substantially higher than that of the internal combustion engine 40; the output shaft of motor 25 can be connected to the road wheels by a chain-drive reduction unit, as indicated in Fig. 4. The maximum speed of the internal combustion engine is preferably limited to on the order of 6000 rpm to limit wear, noise and vibration, which increase with higher operating speeds, and because engines capable of higher-rpm operation tend to have narrow ranges of rpm within

which they produce substantial torque; the latter characteristic would be undesirable in a vehicle not having a variable-ratio transmission and intended to cruise powered solely by the internal combustion engine, according to the invention.

5 By comparison, operating the motors 21 and 25 at maximum speeds of 9000 - 18,000 rpm allows them to be made smaller, lighter, and less costly; whether this advantage overcomes the added complexity of chain, gear, or belt drives, or other mechanical means allowing combination of torque from the motors
10 with that from the engine, is a matter of engineering choice that may vary from one model of vehicle to the next. Both are accordingly within the present invention. If each of the torque-producing components (that is, engine 40 and starting and traction motors 21 and 25) is to be operated at the same speed, a maximum
15 speed of approximately 6000 rpm is preferred, as this represents a good compromise between cost, weight, and size of the key components.

As discussed above, it is preferred that motors 21 and 25 have more than two poles, and be operated by current applied over more
20 than three phases, so that failure of some components - such as the power semiconductors used in the inverter/charger units, as discussed below - can be tolerated without total failure of the vehicle. It is also desired that the battery bank be divided into two, with the vehicle chassis connected between them, halving the
25 voltage between given components and the vehicle chassis, and thus simplifying their construction, insulation, and connection. Fig. 5 shows a partial schematic diagram of a circuit providing these attributes.

The functions of the inverter/chargers 23 and 27 (separate
30 inverter/chargers being required to allow independent operation of motors 21 and 25) include control of motors 21 and 25 to operate as motors or as generators; operation of traction motor 25 in the opposite direction for reversing the vehicle; conversion of DC stored by the battery bank to AC for motor operation; and

conversion of AC induced in the motors when operated as generators to DC for battery charging. Essentially similar functions were provided by the solid-state switching AC/DC converter 44 in the '970 patent; where not specified to the contrary, the discussion thereof is applicable to the inverter design shown in Fig. 5 hereof.

As illustrated in Fig. 5, traction motor 25 is embodied as a five-phase AC induction motor; starting motor 21, which is not fully illustrated, as indicated, can be but is not necessarily generally similar. Other motor types, such as permanent magnet brushless DC motors or synchronous motors, might also be employed. The motors are operated as multiphase devices, having three phases or more, permitting employment of smaller and overall less costly semiconductors, and allowing operation even if some of the semiconductors fail. Use of motors operated at relatively high frequency, e.g., more than 60 Hz, also permits motors of a given power output to be smaller. As shown in Fig. 5, it is currently preferred that at least traction motor 25 be wired in the "wye" arrangement shown, rather than the known "delta" arrangement; it is found that certain undesirable harmonics are reduced by the "wye" arrangement. Both are well known in the art, and within the scope of the invention.

As illustrated in Fig. 5, each of the windings 78 of motor 25 is connected to a pair of semiconductor switching elements 80 collectively making up inverter/charger 27. Inverter/charger 27 is correspondingly configured as a set of ten power semiconductors 80 controlled by switching signals A through J provided by a pulse generator 88 responsive to frequency, polarity and current signals received from microprocessor 48 (Figs. 3 and 4). Typical operating frequencies can be up to 200, 400 or 600 Hz; the transfer of power between the battery bank 22 and motors 21 and 25 is then controlled by pulse-width modulation, that is, by controlling the semiconductors 80 to conduct during portions of the power waveform, the duration of the conducting portions varying in

accordance with the power required. Semiconductors 80 may be any type suitable for handling relatively high voltages and currents; satisfactory insulated-gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs) are currently available and are presently preferred. As conventional, each of the semiconductors 80 is paralleled by a freewheeling rectifier diode 82.

Design of the inverter/chargers 23 and 27 and of pulse generator 88 to provide suitable control signals A through T so that the inverter/chargers perform the functions listed above is within the skill of the art; again, see, for example, Bose, "Power Electronics and Variable Frequency Drives", IEEE, 1996.

The current drawn from the battery bank 22 during long-term operation of the traction and starting motor(s) to propel the vehicle should be limited to 30 - 50 amperes, to reduce the size of the conductors and other components required, as discussed in the '970 patent; these components are satisfactory to carry currents of up to 200 amperes, as may be encountered during full-power acceleration, as this condition will not persist for more than about 30 seconds.

As indicated, the battery bank 22 comprises two substantially similar battery assemblies 84; in one embodiment, each battery assembly will comprise eight 48-volt batteries, such that 384 volts is provided by each. The battery assemblies 84 are connected in series, so that 768 volts are provided across the circuit "rails" 86, 88. However, the vehicle chassis connection is taken from between the series-connected battery assemblies, so that only 384 volts is present between any given circuit component and the vehicle chassis; this "center-point-chassis" connection significantly reduces various insulation and heat-sinking requirements. More specifically, the conductors, connectors, relays, switches and like elements can be as approved by the National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA) for 600 volt service; such elements are widely available, and are much more easily employed and much less expensive than those needed for

continuously carrying current at, for example, 300 volts and 300 amperes.

Preferably, as indicated by Fig. 5(a), illustrating a detail of a portion of one of the battery assemblies 84, the 48-volt batteries 85 are connected by normally-open relays 87, so that the batteries 85 are isolated from one another under fail-safe conditions; for example, if the vehicle is involved in an accident, power to the relays is cut off, so that the maximum open voltage anywhere in the vehicle is 48 volts, reducing the danger of fire. Similarly, the relays open when the vehicle's "ignition" is shut off by the operator.

The present continuation-in-part application adds to the above from the '817 application that an auxiliary 12-volt system may also be provided, as shown at 223 in Fig. 14, discussed further below. This would be a DC-to-DC converter, allowing the vehicle to provide "jumping" current to start other vehicles having conventional 12-volt electrical systems, and would also allow the vehicle of the invention to be jumpstarted similarly, if necessary. Provision of a 12-volt system also allows convenient employment of conventional automotive accessories, such as radios and the like. The 12-volt system could perhaps most conveniently be implemented by a separate semiconductor-implemented voltage conversion circuit, transforming the 48 volts from one of the batteries to 12 volts for jumping others, and providing the inverse 12 to 48 volt transformation as needed. It should also be understood that the individual batteries could be 42 volt units, conforming to the apparent trend toward 42 volt systems for new vehicles. Further preferably, the entire battery bank assembly, including the relays, is enclosed in a rugged container, significantly reducing the danger of electrical shock and the like.

Turning now to detailed discussion of the inventive control strategy according to which the hybrid vehicles of the invention are operated: as in the case of the hybrid vehicle system shown in the '970 patent, and as discussed in further detail below, the

vehicle of the invention is operated in different modes depending on the torque required, the state of charge of the batteries, and other variables. Throughout, the object is to operate the internal combustion engine only under circumstances providing a significant load, thus ensuring efficient operation. In the following, the relationships between these modes are illustrated using several different techniques, to ensure the reader's full understanding of various aspects of the vehicle control strategy; some of these are seen more clearly in one form of illustration than another.

Fig. 6 illustrates the several modes of vehicle operation with respect to the relationship between the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirements or "road load", the state of charge of the battery bank 22, and time, while Fig. 7 shows variation in, and the relationship between, road load, engine torque output, and the state of charge of the battery bank over time, that is, during an exemplary trip. Figs. 8(a) - (d) show simplified schematic diagrams of the vehicle of the invention in its principal modes of operation, showing the flow of energy, in the form of electricity or combustible fuel, by dot-dash lines, and the flow of torque by dashed lines. Finally, Fig. 9 provides a high-level flowchart, showing the principal decision points in the algorithm according to which the microprocessor operates the various components of the hybrid vehicle drivetrain according to the invention, and Figs. 9 (a)-(c) show details and modifications thereof.

As noted, the preferred control strategy of the invention is illustrated in several different ways by Figs. 6 - 9. The same specific numerical examples for various significant control variables, data items, and the like are used throughout for clarity. It will be understood that these examples would normally be expressed as ranges; although ranges are not used in the following, to simplify the discussion, it should be understood throughout that these numerical examples are exemplary only, and that the invention is not to be limited to the exact values of the

control variables mentioned herein.

Further, it should be realized that certain of these control variables need not be restricted to specific numbers; in some cases, the decision points may be "fuzzy", i.e., so-called "fuzzy logic" may be employed, so that while the operating scheme retains its overall characteristics, the specific values against which the control variables and data items are tested in implementation of the control strategy according to the invention may vary from time to time. Examples of this practice -- amounting in many circumstances to modifying certain specific values depending on other data items not discussed in detail, or by monitoring the vehicle's actual usage patterns over time -- are given below.

Given these several different explanations of the relationship between the various operating modes of the vehicle of the invention, and specifically these different illustrations of the combinations of conditions in response to which the microprocessor controls mode selection, one of ordinary skill in the art would have no difficulty in implementing the invention.

As noted, during low-speed operation, such as in city traffic, the vehicle is operated as a simple electric car, where all torque is provided to road wheels 34 by traction motor 25 operating on electrical energy supplied from battery bank 22. This is referred to as "mode I" operation (see Fig. 6), and is illustrated in Fig. 8(a). The same paths of energy and torque may also be employed under emergency circumstances, referred to as mode III operation, as discussed below.

While operating at low speeds, e.g., when the vehicle's torque requirements ("road load", or "RL") are less than 30% of the engine's maximum torque output ("MTO"), engine 40 is run only as needed to charge battery bank 22. Starting motor 21 is first used to start engine 40, and is then operated as a generator by appropriate operation of inverter/charger 23, so that charging current flows to battery bank 22. Accordingly, clutch 51 is disengaged, so that the road speed of the vehicle is independent of

the speed of engine 40; engine 40 can thus be operated at relatively high output torque level, for fuel efficiency. This "mode II" operation is illustrated in Fig. 8(b); as indicated, clutch 51 is disengaged, so that engine operation to charge battery bank 22 through starting motor 21, and propulsion of the vehicle by traction motor 25, are completely independent of one another.

As in the '970 patent, engine 40 is sized so that its maximum torque is sufficient to drive the vehicle in a range of desired cruising speeds; this requirement ensures that the engine is operated at high efficiency during normal highway cruising. Therefore, when a sensed increase in the road load (e.g., by a continued operator request for more power) indicates that the preferred operating mode is changing from low-speed to highway cruising operation, the microprocessor controls starting motor 21 by way of inverter/charger 23 to start engine 40. When engine 40 is essentially up to speed, clutch 51 is engaged, so that engine 40 drives road wheels 34 through the shafts of motors 21 and 25. When the operator releases pressure on the accelerator pedal, indicating that a desired cruising speed has been reached, traction motor 25 is accordingly depowered. The highway cruising mode is referred to as "mode IV" operation, and the flow of energy and torque are as illustrated in Fig. 8(c).

If extra torque is needed during highway cruising, e.g., for acceleration or hill-climbing, either or both of motors 21 and 25 can be powered. This "mode V" operation is illustrated in Fig. 8(d); energy flows from tank 38 to engine 40, and from battery bank 22 to traction motor 25, and possibly also to starting motor 21; torque flows from either or both motors and engine to wheels 34.

The flow of energy during battery charging is not illustrated *per se* in Fig. 8, but will be understood by those of skill in the art, and is further described below. For example, when the engine's instantaneous output torque exceeds the road load, the starter motor 21 is operated as a charger, supplying recharging current to the battery bank. Similarly, when the road load is

trending downwardly or is negative, either the traction motor or the starter motor, or both, can be operated as a regenerative battery charger, supplying recharging current to the battery bank; braking can be accomplished similarly in response to an appropriate operator command.

Fig. 6, as indicated above, is a diagram illustrating differing modes of operation of the hybrid vehicle powertrain of the invention; the modes of operation, indicated by numerals I - V, are plotted on a three dimensional chart, illustrating that the mode of vehicle operation as controlled by microprocessor 48 is a function of the state of charge of the battery bank, the instantaneous road load, and time. Fig. 7, discussed below, further illustrates the inventive mode of vehicle operation.

Fig. 6 shows on one axis the state of battery charge extending from 70% at the origin outwardly to a minimum value shown of 30%. Normally the batteries are maintained at least 30% of full charge. Preferably, the battery bank is not charged to more than 70% of its theoretical full capacity; if a number of series-connected batteries were all charged to 100% of their nominal full charge, some would likely be overcharged due to manufacturing variation, local temperature variation and the like, which would significantly shorten their service life. Moreover, frequently recharging any individual battery to 100% of its theoretical capacity is deleterious to battery life as well.

The road load is shown in Fig. 6 on a second axis as varying from 0 at the origin to 200% of the engine's maximum torque output. (Negative road load, occurring during descents or under braking, is not shown in Fig. 6 due to the difficulty of illustration. This circumstance is discussed in connection with Fig. 7, below.) Time is shown on the third axis extending from an arbitrary point at the origin; that is, Fig. 6 shows the mode of the vehicle's operation over the next short period of time (on the order of 30 - 60 seconds) from a present instant at the origin. Stated differently, according to one aspect of the invention, the microprocessor 48

controls the vehicle's mode of operation at any given time in dependence on "recent history," as well as on the instantaneous road load and battery charge state.

5 More specifically, Fig. 6 shows that during city driving (mode I), defined in this example as driving where the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirements, or "road load", is up to 30% of the engine's maximum torque, the vehicle is operated as a "straight electric" car, the clutch being disengaged and energy from the battery bank 22 being used to power traction motor 25 to propel the vehicle, as long as the battery remains charged to between 50 and 10 70% of its full charge. If the charge falls to below a given value, which may vary over time as indicated by the curved line defining the extent of mode II, mode II is entered as indicated, the engine is started, and the starter motor 21 is operated as a generator to charge the battery to substantially full charge. As 15 indicated in mode III, operation of the vehicle as an electric car may also be permitted when the battery falls to below 40% of full charge, for example, if there is a fault in the engine or charging system, but only on an emergency basis; such deep discharge is harmful to battery life. 20

During highway cruising, region IV, where the road load is between about 30% and 100% of the engine's maximum torque output, the engine alone is used to propel the vehicle. Accordingly, when the microprocessor detects that transition between regions I and IV 25 is required (e.g., the microprocessor can effectively determine the road load by monitoring the response of the vehicle to the operator's command for more power), it causes the starting motor 21 to spin the engine 40 to relatively high speed; when a desired starting speed, typically 300 rpm, is reached, the electronic engine management unit 55 and electronic fuel injection unit 56 are 30 controlled to fire the spark plugs and supply fuel, respectively, starting the engine. Thus starting the engine at relatively high rpm allows a near-stoichiometric fuel/air mixture to be used, as compared to the much richer mixtures normally used for starting.

Emissions of unburned hydrocarbons are thus substantially reduced, and fuel economy improved.

When the speed of the engine output shaft substantially matches that of traction motor 25, clutch 51 is engaged; the power produced by motor 25 is reduced as that produced by engine 40 is increased, so that the transition between modes I and IV is smooth and essentially undetected by the operator. When the operator reduces pressure on the accelerator pedal 69, indicating that the desired cruising speed has been reached, power to motor 25 is reduced to zero.

If the operator then calls for additional power, e.g. for acceleration or passing, region V is entered; that is, when the microprocessor detects that the road load exceeds 100% of the engine's maximum torque output, it controls inverter/charger 27 so that energy flows from battery bank 22 to traction motor 25, providing torque propelling the vehicle in addition to that provided by engine 40. Starting motor 21 can similarly be controlled to provide propulsive torque.

As indicated above, during highway cruising, where the torque required to propel the vehicle varies as indicated by the operator's commands, the control system operates the engine at correspondingly varying torque output levels. The range of permissible engine torque output levels is constrained to the range in which the engine provides good fuel efficiency. Where the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement exceeds the engine's maximum efficient torque output, e.g., during passing or hill-climbing, one or both of the electric motors are energized to provide additional torque; where the vehicle's torque requirements are less than the torque then being produced by the engine, e.g., during coasting, on downhills or during braking, the excess engine torque is used to charge the batteries. Regenerative charging may occur simultaneously, as torque from the engine and recovery of the vehicle's kinetic energy both drive one or both motors operated in generator mode. The rate of change of torque output by the engine

may be controlled to reduce emissions, and in accordance with the state of charge of the battery bank. Fig. 7 illustrates these relationships.

As mentioned above, Fig. 7, comprising Figs. 7(a) - (c), and extending over two sheets, is a timing diagram showing the relationship between road load, engine torque output, the state of charge of the battery bank, and operation of the engine as these vary over time, during low-speed city driving, highway cruising, and extended high-load driving, thus further illustrating the control strategy employed according to the invention.

Fig. 7(a) shows the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement, that is, the "road load", by a solid line, and the engine's instantaneous output torque by a dashed line, as these vary over time. (The engine's instantaneous output torque is repeated in Fig. 7(c), for clarity, and in order to clearly show certain additional aspects of the inventive control strategy.) The road load is expressed as a function of the engine's maximum torque output. Where the road load exceeds the engine's instantaneous output torque, the cross-hatched areas between these two lines represent torque provided by the traction and or starting motor(s); where the road load is less than the engine's instantaneous output torque, the cross-hatched areas represent charging of the batteries.

It will be appreciated that positive vehicle torque demands correspond to steady-state cruising, acceleration, hill-climbing, or the like, while negative vehicle torque requirements correspond to deceleration or descent. The engine's output torque is constrained to the range of efficient operation; as illustrated in Fig. 7 (a) and (c), this range is controlled to be between 30% and 100% of the engine's maximum torque output ("MTO"). As mentioned above, it will be appreciated that the 30% figure, as well as similar figures mentioned herein, may vary without departure from the scope of the invention.

In the example of vehicle operation shown in Fig. 7, initially

the vehicle is operated only at road loads below 30% of MTO, that is, in traffic, as indicated at A. Accordingly, all the torque required is provided by the traction motor 25, and the state of charge of the battery bank 22 ("BSC"), as illustrated by Fig. 7(b), corresponds directly to the road load; when the road load is negative, BSC increases as the battery bank is charged by regenerative braking. (Changes in BSC are significantly exaggerated in order to clearly explain the events shown.)

At point B, the road load exceeds 30% of MTO for the first time on this particular trip. When this is detected by microprocessor 48, starting motor 21 spins the engine 40 at relatively high speed, and the catalytic converter 64 is preheated, causing a short drain on BSC, as shown at C. When the engine reaches the desired starting speed, e.g. 300 RPM, and the catalyst reaches a minimum effective operating temperature, e.g. at least about 350° C, the engine is started by supply of fuel and firing of its spark plugs, and the clutch is then engaged. As the engine is already rotating at relatively high speed, and will have been warmed by compression of air in its cylinders during the starting process, it begins to produce useful torque almost immediately, as indicated at D.

Thereafter, when the vehicle's torque requirement exceeds the instantaneous engine output torque, as at points E - G and P, one or both of the traction and starting motors 25 and 21 are powered to provide additional torque to the road wheels, that is, the vehicle is operated in mode V. While the road load RL remains within the engine's efficient operating range, e.g., while $30\% \text{ MTO} > \text{RL} > 100\% \text{ of MTO}$, the vehicle is operated in mode IV. During mode IV operation, if the engine's instantaneous torque output exceeds the vehicle's torque requirement, but the battery is relatively fully charged, as at point H, the engine's torque output is reduced to match the road load; when MTO exceeds the road load, and BSC falls below a predetermined level (see Fig. 7(b)), as at I and J, the excess torque available from engine 40 is used to charge

the batteries, as indicated at K and L (Fig. 7(c)). When the vehicle's torque requirement is less than the minimum permissible engine torque output, as at M, the engine is again used to charge the batteries, and regenerative braking is also performed, further charging the batteries. If the batteries become substantially fully charged, e.g., during a long descent, as at N, the engine may be shut off entirely, as seen at Q in Fig. 7(c).

More particularly, during deceleration or "coast-down", the engine may be "motored", that is, driven by torque from the wheels, with the clutch engaged, but with at least the fuel supply shut off. In addition to using no fuel, this has the advantage that when the operator next requires torque, e.g., when reaching the point at the bottom of a hill, the engine is rotating and can be immediately restarted by supply of fuel. The exhaust valves might be opened during the motoring of the engine to reduce pumping losses.

The rate of change of the engine's torque output is limited, e.g., to 2% or less per revolution, as indicated by noting that the dashed line in Fig. 7(a), indicating the instantaneous engine output torque, lags the solid line indicating the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement. Thus limiting the rate of change of engine output torque is preferred to limit undesirable emissions and improve fuel economy; that is, as the stoichiometric fuel/air ratio varies somewhat as the load changes, simply opening the throttle and causing additional fuel to be injected (as is typically practiced) upon the operator's depressing the accelerator pedal would result in non-stoichiometric, inefficient combustion. According to this aspect of the invention, the rate of change of engine torque is limited; this provides sufficient time for the essentially conventional electronic engine management and electronic fuel injection systems, which comprise a "lambda sensor" 47 (Fig. 3) for monitoring the oxygen content of the exhaust gas stream as an indication of stoichiometric combustion, to respond as the load changes, preserving stoichiometric combustion and reducing

emission of unburned fuel.

The maximum permissible rate of change of engine output torque also may be varied in accordance with the state of charge of the batteries; more specifically, if the batteries are relatively discharged, it may be preferable to allow the engine's output torque to ramp-up more quickly than otherwise, in order to limit the amount of electrical power drawn from the batteries in response to an acceleration command. More generally, it is preferred to operate the engine so as to limit the amount of power drawn from the batteries, as there are unavoidable losses attendant on conversion of energy stored in the batteries to motor output torque, and during the corresponding recharging period.

As mentioned above, Fig. 9 is a high-level flowchart of the principal decision points in the control program used to control the mode of vehicle operation. Broadly speaking, the microprocessor tests sensed and calculated values for system variables, such as the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement, i.e., the "road load" RL, the engine's instantaneous torque output ITO, both being expressed as a percentage of the engine's maximum torque output MTO, and the state of charge of the battery bank BSC, expressed as a percentage of its full charge, against setpoints, and uses the results of the comparisons to control the mode of vehicle operation.

As noted above, certain control decisions involved in the inventive control strategy illustrated in Fig. 9, and described therein as being determined in response to precise criteria (in order to clearly present the main features of the inventive operating strategy), may instead be usefully somewhat "fuzzy"; in the present application, this term is intended to indicate that the value of a setpoint (for example) may vary somewhat in response to recent history, or in response to monitored variables not discussed above. As mentioned above, it is also to be understood that the values given above for various numerical quantities may vary somewhat without departing from the invention. Specific

alternatives are provided below for steps set forth in Fig. 9 that implement certain of these alternatives.

For example, in the example of the inventive control strategy discussed above, it is repeatedly stated that the transition from low-speed operation to highway cruising occurs when road load is equal to 30% of MTO. This setpoint, referred to in the appended claims as "SP", and sometimes hereinafter as the transition point (i.e., between operation in modes I and IV) is obviously arbitrary and can vary substantially, e.g., between 30 - 50% of MTO, within the scope of the invention.

It is also within the scope of the invention for the microprocessor to monitor the vehicle's operation over a period of days or weeks and reset this important setpoint in response to a repetitive driving pattern. For example, suppose the operator drives the same route from a congested suburban development to a workplace about the same time every morning; typically the road load might remain under 20% of MTO for the first few minutes of each day, then vary between 0 and 50% of MTO for another few minutes as the operator passes through a few traffic lights, and then suddenly increase to 150% of MTO as the operator accelerates onto a highway. It is within the skill of the art to program a microprocessor to record and analyze such daily patterns, and to adapt the control strategy accordingly. For example, in response to recognition of a regular pattern as above, the transition point might be adjusted to 60% of MTO; this would prevent repetitive engine starts as the road load exceeded 30% of MTO for a few hundred yards at a time, as might often occur in suburban traffic. Similarly, the engine starting routine might be initiated after the same total distance had been covered each day.

It is also within the scope of the invention to make the setpoint SP to which the road load is compared to control the transition from mode I to mode IV somewhat "fuzzy", so that SP may vary from one comparison of road load to MTO to the next depending on other variables. For example, as discussed above, if during

low-speed operation the operator depresses the accelerator pedal rapidly, this can be treated as an indication that full power will shortly be required, and the engine-starting operation begun before the road load reaches any particular setpoint SP.

The value of the transition point may also vary in dependence on the mode of operation in effect when the road load equals a given setpoint SP. For example, suppose the setpoint at which the mode of operation is controlled to change from the low-speed mode to the highway cruising mode is normally set to 30% of MTO, as in the examples discussed above. If traffic conditions were such that the road load fluctuated around this value, and engine operation were controlled solely in response to road load, the engine would be repeatedly started and shut off as the road load exceeded 30% of MTO for a few hundred yards at a time, and then fell back below 30% of MTO, as might often occur in suburban traffic. Repeated restarts might also occur if the road load averaged over 30% of MTO but occasionally dropped below this value, as might occur in moderate-speed, flat-road cruising.

By monitoring the road load over time, and comparing it to different setpoints accordingly, much of this undesirable repetitive sequence of engine starting and shut-off can be eliminated. It might be preferable to commence mode IV operation upon the occurrence of differing conditions; for example, mode IV might be entered from mode I only after the road load exceeded a first, lower setpoint SP for an extended period of time, so that the engine would be run for extended low-speed cruising, but to start the engine immediately if the road load exceeded a higher setpoint SP2, e.g. 50% of MTO, as during acceleration to highway speed. Similarly, the engine might preferably be shut down only if the road load was less than a minimum setpoint for mode IV operation for an extended period of time. Thus providing "hysteresis" in the mode-switching determination would limit repetitive engine starts in certain types of driving. These limits could be further adjusted as the driving pattern became clear,

i.e., as discerned by the microprocessor.

In a further refinement, the setpoint at which the engine is shut off as the road load dropped below the usual minimum value for mode IV operation could vary dependent on BSC; if the batteries were substantially fully charged, the engine might be shut off as road load dropped below 30% of MTO, but if their charge was lower the engine might be controlled to continue to run, even at a stop, i.e., zero road load, to charge the batteries. Of course, the clutch would still have to be disengaged at when the road load fell below 20 - 30% of MTO, in order that the engine could run at an efficient speed for production of torque.

Fig. 9 thus shows the main decision points of the control program run by the microprocessor, with the transition point between mode I, low-speed operation, and mode IV highway cruising, set at a road load equal to 30% of MTO. Examples are then given for some of the various options discussed above, by substituting various of the decision points with alternatives indicated below. Other optional points not specifically shown but discussed herein are within the scope of the invention.

The control program is entered at step 100, where the microprocessor determines whether the road load RL is less than 30% of MTO. If the answer is yes ("Y"), the clutch is disengaged if necessary as indicated at steps 103 and 105. The state of charge of the battery bank BSC is then tested at step 110; if BSC is between 50 and 70% of full charge, the vehicle can operate for some time as a straight electric vehicle, and mode I is accordingly entered, as indicated at 115. A "mode I" loop is then established, including steps 100, 103, and 110; as long as all conditions tested in these steps remain stable, the vehicle continues to be operated in mode I.

However, if at step 110 it was determined that BSC was less than 50% of its maximum value ("N"), the engine should be run, if possible, to charge the battery bank, up to, for example, 75% of its maximum charge, as tested at step 120. If the engine is

already running, as tested at step 125, the battery is charged as indicated at 130, and a stable "mode II" loop, as noted at 135, is established including steps 100, 103, 110, 120, 125, and 130. (Normal operation of step 110 would be bypassed or disabled in this mode to prevent battery charging from being stopped when BSC reaches 70%). If the engine is not running, an engine starting subroutine (shown separately, by Fig. 9(a), is entered, as indicated at step 140.

0 In the engine starting subroutine, beginning with the 'enter'
block 141, the clutch is disengaged if necessary at steps 142 -
143, and the catalyst temperature is tested at 145, to determine
whether it is at least about 350° C; the catalyst is heated as
necessary, as indicated at 150. When the catalyst is heated
15 suitably, the engine is then spun by the starter motor until a
desired starting speed is reached, as indicated by the loop
including blocks 155 and 160. When the engine reaches its desired
starting speed, it is started at step 165, by supply of fuel and
firing of its spark plugs, concluding the engine starting
subroutine as indicated by 'return' block 170. If the engine
20 starting subroutine was entered from the mode II loop, as above,
the battery bank may then be charged as indicated at 130.

If in performance of step 120 it appeared that BSC was less
than 40%, which would only occur upon failure of the engine or
charging system, step 175 may be performed; thus, if $30\% < \text{BSC} <$
25 40% , the vehicle may be operated in mode III as an electric car, to
provide emergency operation. However, this should be strictly
limited to avoid deep discharge of the battery bank, tending to
shorten its useful life. As indicated at 177, the vehicle is
completely disabled if BSC falls below 30%.

30 If RL is determined to exceed 30% of MTO in step 100, the
program goes to step 180, where the term $30\% > \text{RL} > 100\%$ is
evaluated; that is, the microprocessor determines whether the road
load is appropriate for highway cruising in mode IV. If so, and if
the engine is running, as tested at step 190, a stable loop

including steps 180 and 190 is established; the system remains in mode IV, as indicated at 185, until the state of one of these tests changes.

If in step 190 it is determined that the engine is not running, the engine start subroutine, starting with step 140 as discussed above, is entered as indicated at 195; upon return, at 200, the clutch is engaged at 210, and the loop including steps 180 and 190 is entered.

As noted, in step 180 it is determined whether RL is between 30 and 100% of MTO; if not, it is determined in step 220 whether RL is greater than 100% of MTO. If so, mode V is entered, and the traction motor (and optionally the starting motor) is powered to provide additional torque propelling the vehicle, as indicated at 230. A loop including steps 220 and 230 is thus established, so that mode V remains stable until the state of the test performed in step 220 changes.

When in performance of step 220, it appears that RL is now less than 100% of MTO, it is then determined in step 215 whether RL is less than 30% of MTO. If so, the engine is shut off, as indicated at 240, and the program returns to step 100; if not, the program is returned to step 180.

It will be appreciated that according to the Fig. 9 flowchart, it is possible for the system to proceed directly from mode I to mode V, that is, from step 100 to step 220, if the road load rapidly increases from less than 30% of MTO to more than 100% of MTO. Permitting the operator to thus operate the system is an important safety feature, for example when fast acceleration from a stop is required to merge into highway traffic. In these circumstances the engine would not be running during initial operation in mode V, necessitating a significant drain on the battery bank and overdriving the traction motor. Accordingly, steps equivalent to steps 190, 195, and 210 (including the engine starting subroutine) are to be understood to follow step 220 and precede step 230. That is, in the event mode IV was effectively

omitted in passing directly from mode I to mode V, the engine is started and the clutch engaged as soon as possible; these duplicate steps are not shown, for clarity.

In the above discussion of Fig. 9, it was assumed that the transition point between low-speed and highway operation is set so that the transition occurs when the road load is equal to 30% of MTO under all circumstances. However, as discussed above, it may be desirable to operate the system so that the vehicle goes from the low-speed mode I to the highway-cruising mode IV at a higher road load, e.g., 50% of MTO, than the road load at which the low-speed mode is reentered, e.g., when road load in mode IV falls to below 20%. This "hysteresis" of the mode switching point -- for example, allowing the vehicle to accelerate in mode I up to road loads of up to 50% of MTO, but not shutting the engine off, ending mode IV operation, until road load falls below 20% of MTO -- avoids excessive mode-switching during periods of fluctuating road load.

For example, in typical suburban traffic, one might commonly accelerate past 30% of MTO, to what might otherwise be a normal cruising speed, but stop again shortly thereafter; it would be inefficient to thus repetitively stop and restart the engine as the load fluctuates around 30%. Hysteresis might similarly be useful in avoiding needless mode switching in moderate-speed, flat road cruising in mode IV, when the road load might well occasionally drop below 30%; again, it would be inefficient to repeatedly shut off and restart the engine.

Thus providing differing mode switching points depending on the direction of the change in road load can be accomplished readily by monitoring the road load RL as a function of time, and taking appropriate control action. For example, if the system is maintained in mode I until RL exceeds the "normal" 30% of MTO mode switching point for a period of, for example, 30 seconds, and without exceeding 50% of MTO, the excessive mode switching otherwise likely to be encountered in suburban traffic can be

largely avoided. Fig. 9(b) shows a step 100' replacing step 100 in Fig. 9 and implementing this "low-speed hysteresis". As indicated, the system remains in the low-speed mode I as long as RL is less than 30% of MTO, or unless RL exceeds 30% of MTO for more than 30 seconds, or exceeds 50% of MTO; if either of the latter conditions occurs, the program goes to step 180, initiating mode IV operation.

Similarly, hysteresis in mode IV cruising, in order to implement excessive mode shifting that might otherwise occur if the road load fluctuates around a fixed mode switching point, can be implemented by simply providing that the system remains in mode IV as long as RL remains between 30 and 100% of MTO, unless RL is less than RL for more than 30 seconds, or exceeds 100% of MTO. This can be implemented as shown in Fig. 9(c); a revised step 215' replaces step 215 of Fig. 9, and provides that, if the system is in mode IV, unless RL is less than 30% of MTO for more than 30 seconds, step 180 is re-entered, thus preserving the "mode IV loop"; when RL is less than 30% of MTO for more than 30 seconds, the engine is shut down, at step 240, control is passed to step 100, and mode I re-entered.

Numerous further modifications to the detailed control strategy of the invention as illustrated in Figs. 6 - 9 will occur to those of skill in the art, and are within the scope of the invention. For example, it may be desirable to vary the operation of the system insofar as responsive to BSC in accordance with monitored variables indicative of battery temperature, ambient temperature, and the like; e.g., on a hot day it may be advisable to avoid charging the battery bank to more than 60% of full charge, as this may cause overheating. Further, as noted above the transition points between modes I, IV, and V in particular may vary in accordance with the operator's commands, so as to provide maximum vehicle responsiveness for safety and ease of consumer acceptance, and over periods of days or weeks, as the microprocessor builds up a detailed historical record of the vehicle's usage pattern, from which an optimized control strategy

may be derived.

It may also be possible to provide the microprocessor with useful control information from the operator, without requiring the operator to understand the workings of the system in detail. For example, operators are now well-accustomed to set a "cruise control" when a desired cruising speed is reached; thereafter, existing engine management systems control the instantaneous engine torque output with respect to variation in the road load to maintain vehicle speed substantially constant. It would be a simple matter for the microprocessor to accept a desired cruising speed thus input by the operator, as indicated in Fig. 4. The operator would then be relieved of continuous throttle control, and the microprocessor would similarly control the instantaneous engine torque output with respect to variation in the road load to maintain vehicle speed substantially constant, both as conventional; however, according to the invention, the microprocessor would also reset the transition point so that the system would remain in cruising mode IV until the operator had indicated to the contrary, i.e., by exiting cruise mode.

As discussed above, according to a further embodiment of the invention, additional flexibility is provided to the hybrid vehicle as described above by providing a turbocharger 100, also controlled by the microprocessor 48, so as to be operated when useful in further improving vehicle efficiency and drivability and not at other times. Providing the "turbocharger-on-demand" allows the engine to function efficiently in different torque output ranges, as needed. Essentially, the turbocharger 100 is employed only when the vehicle's torque requirements, the "road load" as above, exceeds the engine's normally-aspirated maximum torque capacity for a relatively extended period T of time, for example, during extended high-speed driving, towing a trailer, or driving up a long hill. Where the road load exceeds the engine's maximum torque for a relatively short period less than T, the traction motor (and possibly also the starting motor) are used to provide additional

torque, as in the '970 patent and above. According to a further aspect of the invention, the period T is controlled in response to the state of charge of the battery bank; when the battery bank is relatively depleted, the turbocharger is activated sooner than otherwise, so as to preserve the battery bank.

As is well known to those of skill in the art, a turbocharger 100 (see Fig. 11) typically comprises two turbine wheels 102 and 104 on a common shaft 106, referred to herein as the exhaust-side and air-side wheels respectively. The flow of exhaust gas from engine 40 causes exhaust-side wheel 102 to spin; air-side wheel 104 is driven by shaft 106, drawing air into the body of turbocharger 100 through air filter 110. Waste heat in the exhaust stream is thus effectively recovered by compressing the intake air, which is then ducted to the intake manifold 122 of engine 40. Additional fuel can be burned in the additional air thus provided, so that additional torque is produced. The compressed air may be cooled adiabatically by heat exchange with ambient air in intercooler 117 if desired, further improving thermal efficiency of engine 40.

In typical turbocharger operation, a "wastegate" 114 is provided to limit the exhaust pressure incident on exhaust-side wheel 102, thus limiting the speed of air-side wheel 104 and regulating the "boost" provided by the turbocharger. The waste gate may be spring-loaded to open at a fixed boost pressure (as typically provided to regulate the output of turbocharged racing engines) or may be controlled in a feedback loop using the pressure in the engine intake manifold as the control variable. See Automotive Handbook, 2nd Ed., Robert Bosch GmbH (1986), p. 356. Further, in conventional practice, the turbocharger is used at all times, and the engine's design is optimized accordingly. For example, turbocharged gasoline engines typically have compression ratios of 7 or 8 to 1, as compared to 9 - 11 to 1 for normally-aspirated engines. Neither practice is employed according to the present invention; the turbocharger is controlled by the microprocessor to operate only when needed, and the engine's

compression ratio, and other design parameters, are selected based on design criteria relevant when operated in the normally-aspirated mode.

5 According to the present invention, the waste gate 114 is controlled by the microprocessor 48; except under circumstances when the extra power provided by turbocharging is needed, the waste gate 114 is open (as shown in Fig. 1), so that the engine exhaust essentially bypasses the turbocharger 100. A valve 120, also controlled by microprocessor 48, may also be provided in the duct
10 connecting the air side of the turbocharger 100 and the intake manifold 122 of the engine, so that the engine 40 draws air through the turbocharger only when in use; a second air filter 124 is then also provided.

15 Commonly, turbocharging for automotive use is employed in order that relatively small-displacement engines will produce high horsepower at the upper end of their operating range; the other design parameters of such engines (e.g., camshaft profiles) are chosen similarly. Engines thus optimized for high-rpm horsepower produce reduced low-speed torque, that is, are "peaky" compared to
20 normally-aspirated engines. A variable-ratio transmission is essential to obtain reasonable acceleration from low speeds. Stated differently, turbocharging as usually implemented for automotive use provides relatively high torque at the upper end of the engine's speed range, but relatively poor torque at lower speeds;
25 such an engine would be unsuitable in practice of the present invention. Moreover, turbocharged engines typically suffer "turbo lag", that is, slow response to sudden increase in torque required. As discussed further below, this particular problem is overcome by use of the turbocharger in a hybrid vehicle according to the
30 invention.

Those of skill in the art will recognize that turbocharged engines are also used in heavy-load road vehicle applications, such as trucks and the like, but these vehicles demand transmissions having 12, 16, or more ratios, so that the engine's narrow power

peak can be matched to the load, and exhibit extremely poor acceleration, as well as excessive gear-changing and cost, all of which would be unacceptable to the ordinary motorist. Thus, normally-turbocharged engines, of both the low-speed truck type, or the high-speed automotive type, are not satisfactory in implementation of the present invention.

As also noted above, as conventionally employed, a turbocharger is used at all times. By comparison, according to the present invention, the turbocharger is controlled by the microprocessor 48 to be used only under specified driving conditions, allowing the engine to be operated efficiently in other modes.

Fig. 12, as indicated above, is a diagram comparable to Fig. 6. The differing modes of operation of the hybrid vehicle powertrain of the invention shown thereon are identical to those of the Figs. 3 and 4 vehicle illustrated in Fig. 6, with the addition of turbocharged mode VI. Similarly, Fig. 13 is similar to Fig. 7, but illustrates the operation of a vehicle including a "turbocharger-on-demand" according to this aspect of the invention.

As shown in Fig. 12, according to this aspect of the present invention, a further region VI is provided, wherein the turbocharger 100 is activated by the microprocessor 48 when it detects that the road load has exceeded the engine's maximum output for more than a period of time T. Typically these events will occur when the vehicle is towing a trailer or is otherwise heavily laden, is climbing a long hill, or is operated at high speed for a long period of time.

More specifically, when the road load only exceeds the engine's maximum power for a short time, less than T, as during acceleration onto a highway or during passing, the traction motor is employed to provide the additional torque required, as described above. When the road load exceeds the engine's maximum power for a time greater than T, the turbocharger is energized by closing waste gate 114, and operating valve 120, if provided, to open the

duct between the air-side of turbocharger 100 and the intake manifold 122 of engine 40. As the turbocharger "spools up" to its operating speed range, the maximum torque produced by engine 40 increases, and the torque produced by traction motor 25 is gradually reduced. This sequence of events is discussed further below in connection with Fig. 13.

Fig. 12 also shows, by the angle of the line separating regions V and VI with respect to the $t = 0$ plane, that T can vary with the state of charge of the battery bank 22; when the battery bank is fully charged, T is longer -- that is, energy from the battery bank is used to satisfy road load in excess of the engine's maximum torque output for a longer period -- than when the battery bank is relatively less fully charged. The turbocharger can also be operated to provide additional engine power when full acceleration is needed, e.g., upon detection of the operator's aggressively pressing the accelerator pedal down completely.

As mentioned above, Fig. 13, comprising Figs. 13(a) - (c), and extending over two sheets, is a timing diagram showing the relationship between road load, engine torque output, the state of charge of the battery bank, and operation of the engine in electric car, normally-aspirated and turbocharged modes as these vary over time, during low-speed city driving, highway cruising, and extended high-load driving, thus further illustrating the control strategy employed according to the invention. Fig. 13 is essentially identical to Fig. 7, with the addition of illustration of the operation of turbocharger 100 when the road load exceeds 100% of MTO for more than a period of time T.

Thus, as shown in Fig. 13(a) at t_1 , t_2 , t_3 , and t_4 , the microprocessor monitors the length of time t during which road load exceeds 100% of MTO, and compares t continually to a value T preferably varied in accordance with BSC; this is shown by the relative lengths of the arrows marked T on Fig. 13(b). While $t < T$, as at E, F, and G in Fig. 13(a), the excess torque required by the road load is provided by either or both of the traction and

starting motors, drawing power from the battery bank. Note that the motors together are rated to be capable of continuously providing torque up to at least 100% of MTO, in accordance with the '970 patent; this allows the motors to provide adequate torque for good vehicle performance without a variable-ratio transmission. The motors may also be overdriven to provide more than their rated torque, well over 100% of MTO, for short periods of time, $t < T$, as at F; as noted, according to an important aspect of the invention, where torque in excess of MTO is needed for a longer period of time, $t > T$, the turbocharger is activated.

Thus, when $t_4 > T$, as at P, the microprocessor activates the turbocharger essentially as discussed above, that is, by closing waste gate 114 and valve 120 (if provided). As the turbocharger "spools up", which may take some seconds, and the boost it provides increases, as indicated at Q, the torque provided by the traction motor (and possibly also by the starting motor) is decreased accordingly, as indicated at R. The operator need not be aware of or take any action to initiate the turbocharger's activation; this is controlled by the microprocessor in response to monitoring the road load over time and the state of charge of the battery bank.

As discussed in connection with both Figs. 12 and 13, T is preferably varied in accordance with BSC, so that the turbocharger is activated relatively sooner when BSC is relatively low; this limits the amount of energy drained from the battery during operation of the engine and the traction motor (or both motors) when the road load exceeds 100% of MTO, so that BSC does not fall to an undesirably low value.

Those of skill in the art will recognize that provision of a microprocessor-controlled turbocharger in a hybrid vehicle according to the invention permits operation in an additional mode, providing increased flexibility in the operational scheme provided; essentially the turbocharger provides a larger engine only when needed, at no cost in efficiency at other times. This is particularly significant in meeting the goals of the hybrid vehicle

of the invention. More specifically, in addition to the operational advantages noted, provision of a "turbocharger-on-demand" in the hybrid vehicle according to the invention allows the engine to be smaller than otherwise, that is, to provide adequate highway performance in a vehicle of a given weight. As the starting motor/generator must be sized such that when it is operated to charge the batteries (e.g., in extended city driving) it loads the engine adequately that the engine is operated efficiently, employment of a smaller engine allows use of a smaller generator motor. For similar reasons, provision of a smaller engine allows it to be used to efficiently propel the vehicle in highway driving commencing at lower average speeds, resulting in turn in better fuel economy. By providing the "turbocharger-on-demand" according to the invention, all these advantages can be realized without sacrifice in the ultimate performance of the vehicle.

As noted above, one convenient implementation of the "turbocharger-on-demand" according to the invention is to operate the wastegate by a solenoid or the like controlled by the microprocessor, that is, to employ the wastegate as a bypass valve except when turbocharged operations are desired. A separate bypass valve might also or alternatively be provided. The wastegate is still preferably implemented as a spring-loaded relief valve, as illustrated in Fig. 11, and as generally conventional, to limit the "boost" provided. It is also within the invention to operate the waste gate to take intermediate positions, that is, between fully-open and closed positions, so as to limit the torque to limit wheelspin as detected, and to keep the turbocharger wheels spinning at an intermediate speed, to reduce the time necessary to "spool up" to full speed. It is also within the invention to adjust the wastegate responsive to an atmospheric-pressure signal provided by a suitable sensor 107 (Fig. 11) to ensure that adequate boost is provided at higher altitudes to ensure vehicle performance.

It will also be appreciated that a supercharger, that is, a

positive-displacement air pump driven by the engine, could be used to implement the differing modes of vehicle operation illustrated in Figs. 12 and 13; for example, the supercharger's operation could be controlled by the microprocessor by driving it through an electrically-controlled clutch, and this is accordingly within the invention. However, this would be less efficient than turbocharger operation, as turbocharging effectively recovers some of the waste heat in the engine exhaust by compressing the air reaching the inlet manifold, while supercharging consumes engine torque. Turbocharging, as discussed in detail, is accordingly preferred.

It will therefore be appreciated that by providing the internal-combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle with a turbocharger controlled by the vehicle's controller to operate only during extended periods of high torque requirements, a number of important advantages are realized, both as compared to a conventional system wherein the turbocharger is continually activated, or as compared to a large engine having the same maximum torque as the smaller turbocharged engine. As to the latter, as explained above all internal combustion engines are extremely inefficient, except when operated at near peak torque output; the larger the engine, the less frequently this will occur. As to the former, employing a conventionally-turbocharged engine, having the typical "peaky" torque curve, would not allow the engine to be used to propel the vehicle during highway driving without a variable-speed transmission. Instead, by providing a "turbocharger-on-demand", that is, which is only employed when it is actually needed, the vehicle of the invention can employ a small engine optimized for its main function of propelling the vehicle efficiently during highway cruising, and which is operable as a much larger engine when needed.

Other advantages provided by the invention include the fact that as the wastegate is normally open, the exhaust temperature will stay high, optimizing catalytic converter performance; as conventionally implemented, cooling of the exhaust gases as their

energy is removed in spinning the turbocharger rotor can prevent good catalytic converter performance, especially at low speeds. Further, because the traction motor provides additional torque when needed, the "turbo lag" experienced in conventional turbocharged vehicles as the turbocharger "spools up" when the operator calls for more power is eliminated.

When constructed and operated according to the invention, that is, as a hybrid vehicle having an internal-combustion engine with a turbocharger controlled by the vehicle's controller to operate only during extended periods of high torque requirements, even a heavy vehicle having poor aerodynamic characteristics, such as a sport-utility vehicle or van, can offer good acceleration and hill-climbing and towing ability, while still providing extremely good fuel economy and extremely low emissions.

Another aspect of the invention concerns the method of sizing the various components of the system. Examples were given above of component selection for a vehicle not including a turbocharger according to this aspect of the present invention. Using as a further example a 5,500 pound "sport-utility vehicle" ("SUV") required to have reasonable acceleration and passing performance even while towing a 6,000 pound trailer, sizing of the components of the hybrid drive system of the present invention is preferably accomplished as follows:

1. An internal combustion engine is selected which has sufficient torque to drive the SUV without trailer at medium to high speed along a moderate grade. More specifically, a typical specification will require that the engine be sufficiently powerful to proceed up a 6% grade of unlimited extent at 50 mph. An engine of 100 hp at 6,000 maximum RPM is appropriate to meet this requirement for the SUV described above.

2. If a trailer is to be towed, a turbocharger, operated as above, is added. The turbocharger is sized so that when it is operated the engine provides up to 140 hp.

3. The charger motor is sized so as to provide an engine load

equal to approximately 70% of the engine's maximum torque at a suitable engine speed. In this way fuel is used efficiently during battery charging, as discussed above. In the example, the charger motor is preferably an induction motor of 15 - 30 hp capacity, possibly configured as a "faceplate" or "pancake" type, essentially forming the flywheel of the engine. Such a motor can be operated as a generator requiring 20 - 22 hp, which is 70% of the maximum torque produced by the engine specified above when operated at 1200 - 1500 rpm; battery charging can thus be accomplished in a very fuel-efficient manner. This is essentially equivalent to specifying the starter/generator based on its ability to accept at least about 30% of the engine's maximum torque output (MTO, as above); in this way the engine is operated at a fuel-efficient power level during charging.

4. The traction motor is sized to provide adequate torque at zero speed to overcome the maximum grade specified from rest, with the starter motor assisting as needed. In the example the traction motor may be an induction motor of 100 hp, with a maximum speed of 16,000 rpm, and be connected to the drive wheels through a chain drive providing the appropriate reduction ratio. It will be appreciated that in this example the total torque available from the starting and traction motors combined exceeds that provided by the engine, in accordance with an aspect of the invention of the '970 patent.

5. The torque vs. speed profile of the traction motor is selected to allow city driving, in particular, to provide acceleration sufficient to conform to the Federal urban driving fuel mileage test ("FUDS"), without use of torque from the engine.

6. The battery capacity is then selected to provide sufficient cycle life, i.e., so as not to be overstressed by deep discharge over many repetitive driving cycles. In the example, an 800 v, 8.5 KAH battery pack is provided. The battery bank should be sized and arranged so that the maximum current to be absorbed with the starter/generator being driven at 30% of MTO is no more than 50

amperes.

5 7. Finally, the controller is provided with software to implement the control scheme described in detail above, that is, to use the traction motor as the only source of drive torque at low speed, to start the engine when the road load increases beyond a setpoint, to operate the turbocharger when the road load exceeds the engine's maximum torque for more than a prescribed time T, which may be varied in accordance with the state of charge of the batteries, and otherwise as described above. Essentially, the controller is operated so that the engine is only operated in a fuel-efficient range, e.g., driving a load at least equal to 30% of MTO.

10 Simulations show that vehicles configured as above will generally be capable of 80 - 100% improvement in fuel economy with respect to conventional vehicles of similar size, weight and performance characteristics.

Further Improvements according to the Continuation-in-Part

Component Specification

20 In addition to the methods of sizing the components of the powertrain and ancillary components set forth above, another method of doing so is generally as follows. As set forth above, it is desirable for a number of reasons to operate the system of the invention at relatively high voltages, e.g., 800 V or above, in the case of larger vehicles; this reduces the current flowing throughout the system, which allows use of plug-in rather than bolted connectors, allows use of inexpensive automatic disconnects, and reduces resistance heating losses.

25 30 More particularly, suppose that the "average maximum" current (e.g., defined as the maximum current flowing for more than, for example, thirty seconds; under most circumstances, the average current would be much less) is controlled to be 50 A. This allows use of inexpensive mass-produced plug-in connectors, and can be

controlled by inexpensive mass-produced power electronic components, as needed to construct the inverter/charger units. These components can be designed to conduct up to approximately 200 A for up to thirty seconds, so that full acceleration can be provided for a time sufficient for the vehicle to reach essentially its maximum speed; according to this aspect of the invention, the peak current can accordingly be set at, for example, 150 A, and the power electronics components then sized based on this value.

More particularly, it appears useful to size the components with respect to one another, in particular, the battery bank with respect to the traction motor(s), so that the peak current is no more than about 150 A, and so that under peak electrical loading (usually under acceleration) a ratio of at least 2.5 : 1 of the battery voltage to the peak current is exceeded.

For example, suppose it is desired to implement the invention with respect to a relatively heavy, e.g., 6000 pound, vehicle having target acceleration capabilities such that a 120 HP electric traction motor, typically drawing 100 kW, will be required. The battery bank for such a vehicle is sized to provide a nominal voltage of 830 V (i.e., when not under load); this will drop to approximately 650 V under load. The battery bank will thus be required to produce 153 A ($= 100 \text{ kW}/650 \text{ V}$) during full acceleration, and the ratio of voltage to peak current is 3.92 ($= 650 \text{ V}/153 \text{ A}$).

In another example, of a much lighter 3000 lb vehicle, a 80 HP, 60 kW motor might be sufficient. To keep the peak current to 115 A, a battery bank of 600 V nominal, 500 V under load would be required. The ratio is then 4.3 ($= 500\text{V}/115 \text{ A}$).

By comparison, insofar as known to the inventors, the Toyota "Prius" hybrid car now being marketed uses a 30 kW motor, and its battery bank provides approximately 230 V under load; the current required is thus approximately 120 A ($= 30 \text{ kW}/230 \text{ V}$) and the ratio between the voltage under load and the peak current is only about 2 ($= 230\text{V}/120\text{A}$). The motor in the Prius is incapable of providing

adequate acceleration without assistance; this in turn requires that an internal combustion engine (ICE) be provided, and be connected to the wheels by way of a variable-ratio planetary gearset. Operation of the ICE in the Prius is thus constrained by the vehicle's torque requirements, which unacceptably complicates its operation and renders it incapable of maximally efficient operation.

Applicants assert, therefore, that according to the invention the components of the hybrid vehicles of the invention are to be sized so that the ratio between battery voltage under load to peak current is at least about 2.5, and preferably is at least 3.5 to 4 : 1; this allows adequate acceleration from low speeds without use of torque from the ICE, which in turn allows elimination of any multiple-speed or variable-ratio transmission, and allows the ICE to be declutched from the wheels except when the ICE can be employed efficiently to propel the vehicle (or the ICE is being motored during deceleration or coast-down, as above). In turn this requirement leads to operation at higher voltages than typical, to keep both average maximum and peak currents low, which provides the very significant advantages mentioned above.

Range-Broadening Transmission

As mentioned above, in some embodiments of the invention as disclosed by the present continuation-in-part application, a two-speed transmission may be provided to broaden the range of utility of the vehicle. An exemplary hybrid vehicle powertrain providing this and further additional features is shown in Fig. 14; where not otherwise described, this embodiment of the invention includes features in common with those discussed above in connection with the '970 patent and the '817 and '743 applications.

More specifically, according to one embodiment of this aspect of the invention of the present continuation-in-part application, the range of efficient use of the hybrid vehicle of the invention

is further broadened by providing a two-speed "range shifting" transmission, akin to those presently provided on SUVs and the like to allow shifting into a "low range", so that when the load is expected to be heavy for extended period of time, for example, when
5 a heavy trailer is to be towed, the transmission can be operated to select the low range. As indicated, such a transmission would normally only be operated once per trip, and is accordingly not equivalent to a conventional multiple-speed transmission which is operated to provide a sequence of effective overall gear ratios
10 each time the vehicle is accelerated, as suggested in numerous prior art references dealing with hybrid vehicles. However, in another embodiment, the two-speed transmission thus provided could be operated conventionally, i.e., shifted automatically during acceleration, or in "kick-down" mode responsive to the operator's
15 demand for acceleration.

In one implementation of this aspect of the invention, as shown in Fig. 14, a planetary gearbox 33 is disposed between the output shafts from the traction motor 25 and the combination of engine 40 and starting motor 21. Gearbox 33 may be controlled
20 directly by the operator, as conventional, or by the microprocessor 48, in response to an operator command or responsive to sensing that the road load has exceeded some predetermined value, e.g. 125% of MTO, for an extended time, e.g. several minutes, or conventionally, i.e., shifted under ordinary acceleration.
25 Typically the gearbox 33 will be locked, providing a direct drive, under ordinary circumstances; when a lower ratio is needed, for example, when towing a heavy trailer, the gearbox 33 may be controlled to yield a reduction of 0.5 - 0.8 : 1.

Fig. 14 also shows a second traction motor 222 driving a
30 second set of road wheels 210 through a second differential 211. This is a convenient way of providing a "four-wheel drive" hybrid vehicle, which avoids the fore-and-aft driveshaft and third differential needed by conventional four-wheel drive vehicles. In this embodiment, road wheels 210 are configured as the steering

wheels of the vehicle; accordingly halfshaft assemblies 212 incorporating universal joints are employed allowing wheels 210 to pivot, as illustrated. Traction motor 222 is connected to battery bank ("BB" in Figs. 14 and 15) via a further inverter/charger 224, controlled by microprocessor 48 essentially similarly to traction motor 25. As noted above, a DC-to-DC converter 223 may be provided to allow the vehicle of the invention to be connected to vehicles having conventional 12 volt electrical systems for emergency starting purposes, and to provide 12 VDC for operation of conventional accessories.

Provision of separate traction motors 222 and 25 with respect to the corresponding pairs of road wheels 210 and 34 has several advantages with respect to conventional vehicles; as noted above, the fore-and-aft driveshaft and third differential normally required are eliminated, freeing substantial space normally required by these components. Further, "traction control" -- that is, control of the amount of torque directed to each pair of wheels responsive to the traction conditions, which is useful in driving in snow or mud, or on wet or icy pavement -- is conveniently accomplished by the microprocessor, simply by monitoring the wheels' response to given amounts of current and reducing the current to spinning wheels.

As shown by Fig. 14, vehicles according to the invention provided with two traction motors and having a planetary gearbox 33 between one traction motor and its corresponding road wheels may have a similar gearbox 213 between the second traction motor 222 and its wheels; however, this second gearbox 213 is not expected to be commonly required. Similarly, second traction motor 222 can be configured as a high-RPM unit, with its output shaft connected to the road wheels through reduction gears 214. In this implementation starter motor/generator 21 is also shown connected to the road wheels through a reduction device 34, illustrated as a chain drive; as indicated above, providing a mechanical reduction between the various motors 21, 25, and 222 and the respective road

wheels is desirable in order that the motors can be selected and optimized to operate at higher speeds than engine 40.

Another possibility not shown specifically by Fig. 14, but within the scope of the invention, is to provide a "torque converter" of essentially conventional design, preferably fitted with a "lock-up" clutch, between the traction motor(s) and the corresponding wheels. As is well known, torque converters are commonly employed as part of automatic transmissions for passenger cars; the torque converter multiplies the input torque at low speeds. Such a torque converter would provide increased acceleration from rest. However, a similar effect can be obtained more simply by overdriving the traction motor(s) beyond their rated power for the first few seconds of acceleration.

Braking System

Numerous patents, including the '970 patent discussed above, recognize that one advantage of hybrid vehicles is that by appropriate control of electric motor/generators connected to the road wheels, a substantial fraction of the energy lost by conventional vehicles to friction can be recovered through regenerative braking, that is, by converting the vehicle's kinetic energy to stored battery power by using torque available at the road wheels to drive the motor(s) in generator mode, and storing the resulting electrical energy in the battery bank for use later. It is commonly estimated that most of the energy expended in accelerating the vehicle in city driving can be recovered in this way, since irrecoverable losses due to air resistance and rolling resistance contribute relatively little to the vehicle's energy demands at low speeds; by comparison, less of the energy expended to drive the vehicle at highway speeds can thus be recovered, although regenerative braking is nonetheless desirable.

More particularly, it is known to operate the motor/generator and cooperating inverter/charger electronics of hybrid vehicles so that electrical power is generated and stored in the battery bank

when the operator desires to slow the vehicle. Accordingly "regenerative braking" per se is known. It is generally also apparent to those of skill in the art that a conventional mechanical braking system must also be provided, both for safety in the event of a failure in the regenerative braking system and to provide braking in the event the battery bank is fully charged; that is, it is important to avoid overcharging the battery bank in order to maximize its useful life. See Boll U.S. patent 5,788,597 and Frank U.S. patent 5,842,534. Similarly, mechanical braking is also needed when regenerative braking is not possible, e.g., at a stop. However, the art known to the inventors does not address all the concerns relevant to provision of a braking system of a hybrid vehicle, and to do so is another object of the present invention. See, e.g., Mikami et al patent 5,839,533, which suggests employment of engine braking (i.e., retardation of the vehicle using torque due to compression of air in the engine, and friction therein) as well as regenerative braking. The choice between the two is apparently to be made by the operator, at least in part responsive to the battery's state of charge. This would be far too complex for general acceptance.

The disclosure of the Boll patent itself is directed to optimizing the use of regenerative, engine, and mechanical braking. Boll also recognizes the desirability of maintaining a consistent brake pedal "feel" in the various brake modes.

German patent application DT 19 05 641 B2 to Strifler discloses a combined regenerative and mechanical braking system for an electric vehicle, wherein regenerative braking is effected upon the operator's first operating a brake lever, and mechanical braking is further effected upon reaching the maximum regenerative braking effect. If the battery cannot accept further charge, the mechanical braking is triggered relatively earlier, so that the operator experiences substantially the same pedal "feel" regardless whether regenerative or mechanical braking is being implemented.

The present invention also recognizes that providing proper

brake "feel" to the operator is important to provision of a satisfactory vehicle, but differs substantially from the teachings of the art, and the Boll and Strifler references in particular, in the type of pedal feel preferred.

5 More particularly, it will be appreciated that typical vehicle mechanical brake systems provide a relatively linear relationship between the force exerted on the brake pedal and the retarding force exerted on the wheels by the brakes. It is essential that this relatively linear relationship be provided by the brake system
10 of any hybrid vehicle, so that the operator can smoothly and controllably brake the vehicle as desired.

Providing a relatively linear relationship between the force exerted on the brake pedal and the retarding force exerted on the tires by the brakes is substantially straightforward in the case of
15 conventional mechanical braking systems. It is much more complicated in the case of a brake system incorporating regenerative braking as described above, since such a system must provide a linear relationship between the force exerted on the brake pedal and the retarding force exerted on the tires by the
20 brakes and motor/generator(s) under all circumstances. The problem is particularly complicated during transitions from one braking regime to another. For example, if regenerative braking is used to commence deceleration but hydraulic braking must take over, e.g., if the battery bank's state of charge becomes full during a long
25 descent, or if a leisurely stop suddenly becomes abrupt, the braking regime must change smoothly and controllably. Regenerative braking is also not available when the vehicle is moving very slowly or is at rest, and mechanical brakes must be available under these circumstances.

30 In addition to maintenance of the linear relationship, it is deemed preferable by the present inventors that the operator be made aware by a change in the "feel" of the brake pedal that regenerative braking is not available, typically due to the battery bank's state of charge becoming full. As noted, this is contrary to

the teachings of the Boll patent and the Strifler German application. More specifically, it is considered desirable by the inventors that the brake pedal resist depression by the operator to a degree proportional to the amount of regenerative braking actually being effected at all times.

Finally, it will be appreciated that the engine manifold vacuum as conventionally used to produce "power braking", i.e., servo assistance, is not available to a hybrid vehicle if the engine is not running; some other source of power for servo assistance is required in order that brake effort is not unacceptably high.

Fig. 15 shows schematically the principal components of a brake system for a hybrid vehicle that addresses the concerns above. Where common reference numerals are employed, the components are common with those shown in other Figures, while components not important to understanding of the braking system are omitted for simplicity. Thus, Fig. 15 shows traction motors 222 and 25 connected directly to the respective road wheels 210 and 34 respectively, omitting the other components discussed above. (In vehicles where a single traction motor drives a single pair of wheels, the improvements described herein would be provided as to these, while a four-wheel hydraulic braking system would also be provided.) As also discussed above, motors 222 and 25 are connected to battery bank 22 through respective inverter/chargers 224 and 27. Inverter/chargers 224 and 27 are controlled by microprocessor 48 to operate so that the motors can draw power from battery bank 22 and impart torque to the respective wheels to propel the vehicle in the appropriate modes of vehicle operation; during regenerative braking, inverter/chargers 224 and 27 are controlled so that the motors absorb torque from the wheels, slowing the vehicle, and storing the power thus generated in the battery bank 22.

Control of the inverter/chargers and motors to absorb a desired amount of torque from the wheels in response to a braking

command from microprocessor 48 is considered to be within the skill of the art. The command itself may be determined by microprocessor 48 responsive to the degree to which brake pedal 70 is depressed, as measured by a potentiometer or similar device, indicated at 71.

5 However, according to the invention, as above, a device is provided which varies the "feel" of the pedal (essentially its resistance to being depressed by the driver) responsive to the degree regenerative braking is in fact being implemented, thereby providing tactile feedback to the driver enabling smooth
10 deceleration and, when appropriate, also providing an indication that regenerative braking is not available.

In the implementation of the invention shown, controllable resistance to the movement of brake pedal 70 is provided by connecting it to a microprocessor-controlled pneumatic cylinder
15 assembly 230. A piston 232 fitting within a pneumatic cylinder 238 is driven by a connecting rod 234 attached to pedal 70 by a clevis 236. As the pedal is depressed, moving from right to left in Fig. 15, i.e., from the position shown in full to that shown in dotted lines, piston 232 expels air from the interior of cylinder 238 via
20 vent 240. The rate at which air is expelled in response to any given pedal pressure is controlled by the spacing of a needle valve 242 from a seat 244; the needle valve 242 is moved closer to its seat 244 to increase the resistance to airflow, or moved away from seat 244 to reduce the resistance. The spacing is controlled by
25 microprocessor 48 in order to vary the feel of the brake pedal 70; in the implementation shown, the needle valve 242 is threaded into the body in which valve seat 244 is formed, and the spacing is controlled by the microprocessor 48 by commands sent to a motor 248 rotating the needle valve 242 through a pair of gears 250. A spring
30 252 may be provided to return the pedal to its initial position. Thus, for example, if regenerative braking is not available, needle valve 242 is opened, so that the cylinder provides little resistance to the pedal, effectively informing the driver that only hydraulic braking is available. When regenerative braking is

initiated, responsive to the microprocessor's detecting a signal from potentiometer 71, the needle valve is closed responsive to the degree of braking provided, resisting motion of the pedal 70, and so that the pedal feel provided to the operator is responsive to the degree of regenerative braking actually being effected. Obviously, numerous other arrangements to thus controllably vary the feel of the brake pedal will occur to those of skill in the art.

The mechanical design of the hydraulic braking system of the hybrid vehicle according to the invention is generally conventional, with two principal exceptions as follows: First, as the engine is not always running during movement of the hybrid vehicle, there is no consistent source of manifold vacuum as conventionally employed to provide servo assistance to braking. Therefore, a motor 254 powered directly by the battery bank BB is provided, and drives a vacuum pump 256, providing vacuum to a conventional servo booster 258, in turn operating conventional wheel brakes 260. The same motor 254 can be used to power other "ancillary" systems that in conventional vehicles are powered by the engine, such as the power steering pump and the air conditioning compressor. (The art does recognize that hybrid vehicles require different sources of power for ancillary devices, such as power steering pumps or power brake pumps. See Heidl patent 5,249,637, at col. 1, lines 7 - 45.) Second, in order that the initial movement of the brake pedal 70 activates only the regenerative braking process (in order to obtain the maximum benefit therefrom), a mechanism is provided so that the rod 262 actuating the piston within master cylinder 264 and thence the wheel brakes 260 moves a distance X before the master cylinder itself is actuated. In the implementation shown, this mechanism simply involves provision of a cross-pin 266 fixed to rod 262 and sliding within a slot 268 formed in the piston rod 270 of master cylinder 264; accordingly, the master cylinder piston(s) do not begin to move until the cross-pin 266 reaches the left end of slot

268. If the overall pedal travel Y is six inches, the distance X defined by slot 268 may be such as to allow pedal 70 to move freely through 1-1/2 inches before the piston(s) of the master cylinder 264 begins to move.

5 Thus, according to this aspect of the invention, potentiometer 71 provides a signal to the microprocessor 48 when the brake pedal 70 is depressed by the driver. The microprocessor 48 evaluates the battery bank state of charge (SOC) as indicated at 66; unless this is such that further charging is undesirable, the inverter/chargers 10 224 and 27 are operated such that motors 222 and 25 are operated as generators, so that torque provided to the wheels by the road is converted into electrical power, retarding the vehicle and charging the battery bank. The degree of retardation thus provided depends on the degree to which pedal 70 is depressed. The driver feels 15 resistance to depressing the pedal from air resistance controlled by the opening of needle valve 242; microprocessor 48 controls the opening of valve 242 so that the pedal feel corresponds to the degree of regenerative braking that is provided. In the event regenerative braking is not available for some reason, perhaps 20 because the battery bank is fully charged, because of some flaw in the charging circuits, or because the vehicle is stopped, valve 242 is opened, so that the driver feels little resistance to initial pedal travel, until the hydraulic brake system is activated.

25 It will be apparent that other types of devices for controlling the resistance to pedal travel to correspond to the amount of regenerative braking being provided, and thus to provide the desired linear relationship between pedal resistance and vehicle retardation, could be substituted for the pneumatic cylinder with microprocessor-controlled vent device shown. For 30 example, a device controllably varying the friction between the pedal pivot and its mounting structure could be provided; a hydraulic system, similarly controlling the resistance to flow of a fluid through an orifice, might be provided; or a device varying the preload of a return spring might be provided. Other equivalent

devices for achieving the same goals will occur to those of skill in the art.

5 HVAC System

10 The essential components of the heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems of conventional vehicles are a heater core, connected to the engine cooling system, an air conditioning system including an evaporator, and a fan to blow air over the heater core and evaporator and into the passenger cabin. There are several issues to be addressed in adapting the conventional automotive HVAC system to use in a hybrid vehicle. One is that conventionally the air conditioning compressor is driven by the engine through an electrically-controlled clutch; in a hybrid vehicle this is unacceptable, as the engine is not run constantly. Therefore the air conditioning compressor must be powered differently. Similarly, again as the engine is not run constantly, the heater core cannot be relied upon to heat the cabin.

20 The art does recognize that hybrid vehicles require different sources of power for ancillary devices, such as power steering pumps or power brake pumps. See Heidl patent 5,249,637, at col. 1, lines 7 - 45. Heidl's disclosure is to the effect that a motor/generator used to drive the ancillaries during electric operation can be used as a generator when the vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine.

25 Fig. 16 shows the principal components of an HVAC system for a hybrid vehicle according to the invention. The complex ducting that is typically provided to supply conditioned air throughout the vehicle cabin is represented by a single duct 300. A fan 302 forces air through the duct 300, and in succession past an evaporator 304, a heater core 306, and an electric heater 308. The evaporator 304 is connected to an air conditioning compressor 310 driven by an electric motor 312 powered from the battery bank, so that the air conditioning system can be operated independent of the

engine 40.

Motor 312 could be the same motor used to power other ancillaries, such as the vacuum pump 256 (Fig. 15) used to provide servo assistance to the brake system, or could be a separate motor dedicated to powering the compressor 310. The latter may be preferred, as this would allow elimination of the clutch otherwise needed to permit operation of the compressor only when needed; elimination of the clutch would also allow elimination of seals that are a source of leaks. Another advantage of driving the compressor from the battery bank according to the invention is as follows. Conventionally, in order to be useful under all circumstances, the compressor must be sized to provide full cooling with the engine at idle. Such a compressor is very inefficient at higher speeds; by decoupling the compressor from the vehicle drivetrain according to the invention, it can be designed to be driven by motor 312 at a single optimally efficient speed. Cabin temperature can be thermostatically controlled by a throttling valve controlling the flow of refrigerant, or by turning motor 312 on and off as required. The other components of the air conditioning system, including an expansion valve 314 and a condenser 316, are shown schematically, and are generally conventional.

When the engine is running, it is efficient to employ waste heat from the engine cooling system to provide cabin heat, and accordingly an essentially conventional heater core 306 and control elements (not shown) are provided; heater core 306 is downstream of the evaporator 304 with respect to the flow of air through duct 300, as conventional, so that dehumidified air can be heated to provide efficient demisting.

In order to provide heat as may be required when the engine is not running, an electric heating element 308, essentially comprising a coil of Nichrome wire or the like, is provided, again downstream of the evaporator 304. Heating element 308 is provided with conventional controls (not shown) and is powered directly from

the battery bank 22, as indicated.

5 It will be appreciated that according to this aspect of the invention, suitably heated or cooled cabin air is thus available regardless of the mode of operation of the vehicle, as needed in order that the hybrid vehicle of the invention suffers no comfort or convenience drawback with respect to conventional vehicles. Indeed, because ample electrical power is available from the large battery bank of the hybrid vehicle, electric heater 308 can be designed to heat the cabin much more rapidly than does the coolant
10 heat exchanging core of a conventional engine, thus providing a convenience advantage. Similarly, conductors can be embedded in the vehicle windows and windshield and powered by the battery bank for improved electrically-operated de-misting and de-icing.

15 It will be appreciated that the hybrid vehicle and operational strategy therefor of the invention provide numerous advantages over the prior art discussed herein, and that further improvements and modifications thereto are within the skill of the art. Accordingly, while a preferred embodiment of the invention has been disclosed, and various alternatives mentioned specifically, the invention is
20 not to be limited thereby.

1. In a method of controlling an internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle, said engine being operatively connected to drive wheels of said vehicle through a clutch, said vehicle further comprising a traction motor operatively connected to drive wheels of said vehicle, a starter/generator motor operatively connected to said engine for starting said engine and for providing electrical power in response to torque from said engine, a battery bank adapted to store electrical energy to power said traction motor and to start said engine, at least one inverter/charger adapted to cooperate with said traction motor and said starter/generator such that said traction motor can be operated to provide torque to said road wheels responsive to electrical power from said battery bank, or to provide electrical power to said battery bank responsive to torque from said road wheels, and such that said starter/generator can be operated to provide torque to start said engine, or to provide electrical power to said battery bank responsive to torque provided by said engine, and a microprocessor adapted to control operation of said engine, said traction motor, said starter/generator, and said at least one inverter/charger, so as to control flow of torque and electrical power therebetween in response to sensed parameters, the improvement comprising:

establishing at least four vehicle operating modes, including:

a mode I, wherein said engine is not operated and said vehicle is propelled by torque from said traction motor in response to electrical power drawn from said battery bank;

a mode II, wherein said vehicle is propelled by torque from said traction motor in response to electrical power drawn from said battery bank, and said starter/generator is driven by torque provided by said engine to provide electrical power to recharge said battery bank;

a mode III, wherein said vehicle is propelled by torque from said engine;

a mode IV, wherein said vehicle is propelled by torque from

35 said engine and from said traction motor in response to electrical
power drawn from said battery bank;

wherein said microprocessor controls operation of said engine,
said traction motor, said starter/generator, and said at least one
inverter/charger in response to the instantaneous torque demands
(RL) of said vehicle, and such that said engine is operated only in
40 response to a load equal at least to a predetermined minimum value
of its maximum torque output.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein said starter/generator is
sized with respect to said engine such that said starter/generator
is capable of being driven by said engine in said mode II while
said engine produces at least about 30% of its maximum torque
5 output.

3. The method of claim 2, wherein said battery bank is sized
such that the charging current supplied by said starter/generator
in response to torque from said engine while producing at least
about 30% of its maximum torque output is no more than about 50
5 amperes.

4. The method of claim 1, wherein said microprocessor controls
operation of said vehicle such that said mode III is entered only
when RL is at least equal to a predetermined fraction of the
engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

5. The method of claim 4, wherein mode III is entered only
when RL is substantially equal to at least 30% of MTO.

6. The method of claim 5, wherein said vehicle is operated in
mode III while $30\% < RL < 100\%$ of MTO.

7. The method of claim 1, wherein mode IV is entered only when
RL $> 100\%$ of MTO.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein said vehicle further comprises a turbocharger adapted to be controlled by said microprocessor so as to increase the torque output of said engine from its maximum value while normally aspirated (MTO), and wherein a further vehicle operating mode V is established, wherein said turbocharger is controlled to operate when RL is greater than MTO for more than a given period of time T.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein if said vehicle is in said mode IV, with RL between 30 and 100% of MTO, and if RL then exceeds 100% of MTO, torque required in excess of 100% of MTO is initially provided by said traction motor, and if RL continues to exceed 100% of MTO for more than a given period of time T, said turbocharger is activated by said microprocessor such that said engine produces torque in excess of 100% of MTO.

10. A brake system for a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a drive train including an internal combustion engine operated to provide vehicle propulsive torque only during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle and at least one traction motor and corresponding inverter/charger adapted to provide vehicle propulsive torque during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle and to provide electrical energy responsive to torque from wheels of said vehicle during a regenerative braking mode of operation of said vehicle, a battery bank adapted to provide electrical energy to said motor as required and to accept charging energy from said motor when operated as a generator during said regenerative braking mode of operation of said vehicle, and a microprocessor for controlling the mode of operation of said vehicle, said brake system comprising:

a brake pedal adapted to be operated by a driver of said vehicle,

a hydraulic brake system coupled to said brake pedal and comprising at least one master cylinder and a number of wheel

brakes operatively connected to said master cylinder for retarding
20 said vehicle upon actuation of said pedal,

a sensor for providing a signal to said microprocessor
responsive to motion of said brake pedal,

a sensor for providing a signal to said microprocessor
responsive to the state of charge of said battery bank,

25 a device controllable by said microprocessor to vary the
resistance to motion of said pedal during braking responsive to the
amount of regenerative braking being provided,

wherein said microprocessor controls the amount of
regenerative braking provided upon motion of said pedal responsive
30 to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls the
resistance to motion of said pedal during braking responsive to the
amount of regenerative braking being provided.

11. The brake system of claim 10, wherein said device
controllable by said microprocessor to vary the resistance to
motion of said pedal during braking responsive to the amount of
regenerative braking being provided comprises a pneumatic cylinder
5 having a piston sliding therein, said piston being operated by said
brake pedal, and comprising a vent passage including an orifice
controllable by said microprocessor to control the resistance to
motion of said pedal.

12. The brake system of claim 10, wherein said at least one
master cylinder is coupled to said brake pedal by an actuating rod
arranged so that said pedal can be moved through a predetermined
distance before said master cylinder begins to apply pressure to
5 said wheel brakes.

13. The brake system of claim 10, wherein said hydraulic
brake system comprises a servo actuator and a vacuum pump driven by
a motor responsive to electrical power supplied from said battery
bank.

14. A heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) system for a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a drive train including an internal combustion engine run only during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle and at least one traction motor adapted to provide vehicle propulsive torque during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle, a battery bank adapted to provide electrical energy to said motor as required, said HVAC system comprising:

a duct having a fan disposed therein for forcing air along said duct;

an evaporator in said duct;

an air conditioning compressor connected to said evaporator, and driven by an electric motor powered by said battery bank;

a heater core in said duct and connected to a cooling system of said engine; and

an electrical heating element in said duct and connected to said battery bank.

15. The HVAC system of claim 14, wherein said evaporator is disposed in said duct upstream of said heater core and said electrical heating element with respect to the direction of air flow through said duct.

16. A method for determining the relative sizes of the internal combustion engine, starting/charging and traction motors, and battery bank of a hybrid vehicle comprising said components, said method comprising the steps of:

a. selecting an internal combustion engine having sufficient torque to drive the vehicle without trailer at medium to high speed along a moderate grade;

b. sizing the starting/charging motor to provide an engine load during battery charging equal to at least approximately 30% of the engine's maximum torque output;

c. sizing the traction motor to provide adequate torque

at zero speed to overcome the maximum grade specified from rest, with the starter motor assisting as needed;

15 d. determining the maximum power drawn by the selected motor under full power conditions;

e. calculating the battery voltage under load that will be required to provide the power to be drawn by the motor(s) under full power conditions, and so that the ratio of the battery voltage under load to the peak current drawn by the motor(s) is
20 at least 2.5:1, and

f. selecting the battery bank to provide the calculated voltage under peak load conditions.

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

5 A hybrid vehicle comprises an internal combustion engine, a traction motor, a starter motor, and a battery bank, all controlled by a microprocessor in accordance with the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands so that the engine is run only under conditions of high efficiency, typically only when the load is at least equal to 30% of the engine's maximum torque output. In some embodiments, a turbocharger may be provided, activated only when the load exceeds the engine's maximum torque output for an extended period; a two-
10 speed transmission may further be provided, to further broaden the vehicle's load range. A hybrid brake system provides regenerative braking, with mechanical braking available in the event the battery bank is fully charged, in emergencies, or at rest; a control mechanism is provided to control the brake system to provide linear
15 brake feel under varying circumstances.

1 1 17

FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

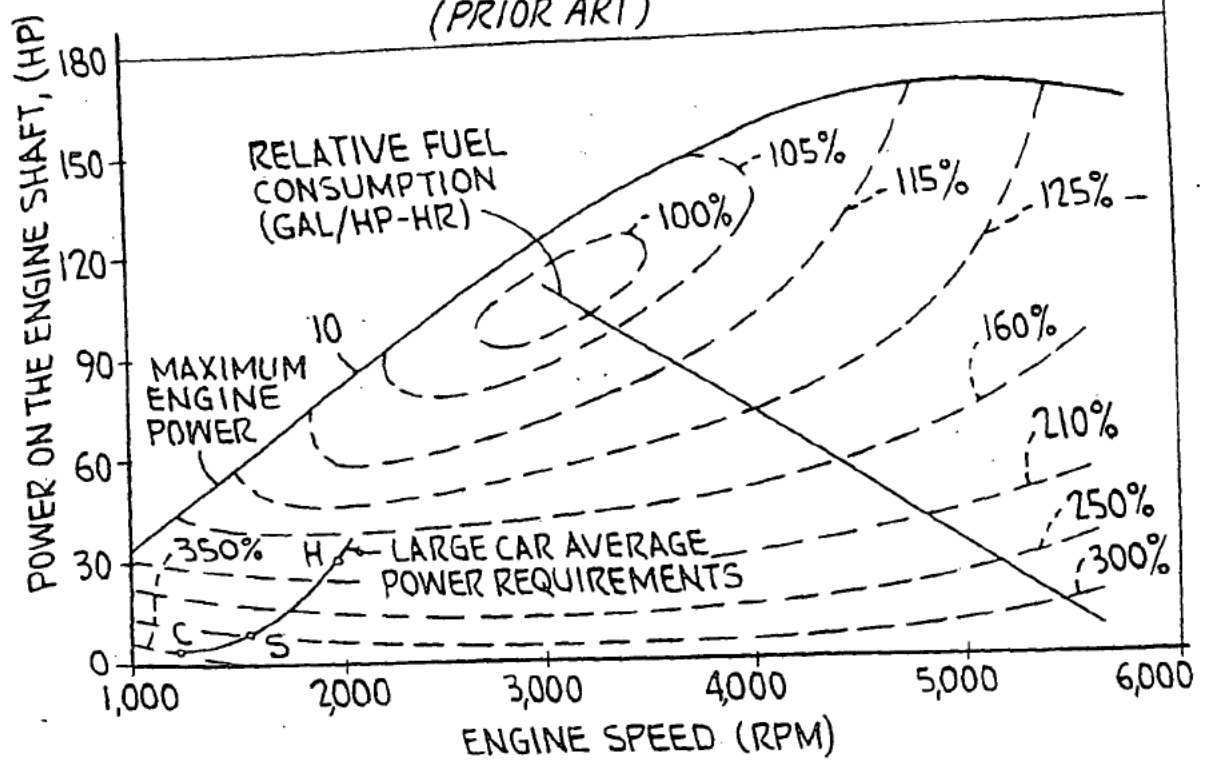
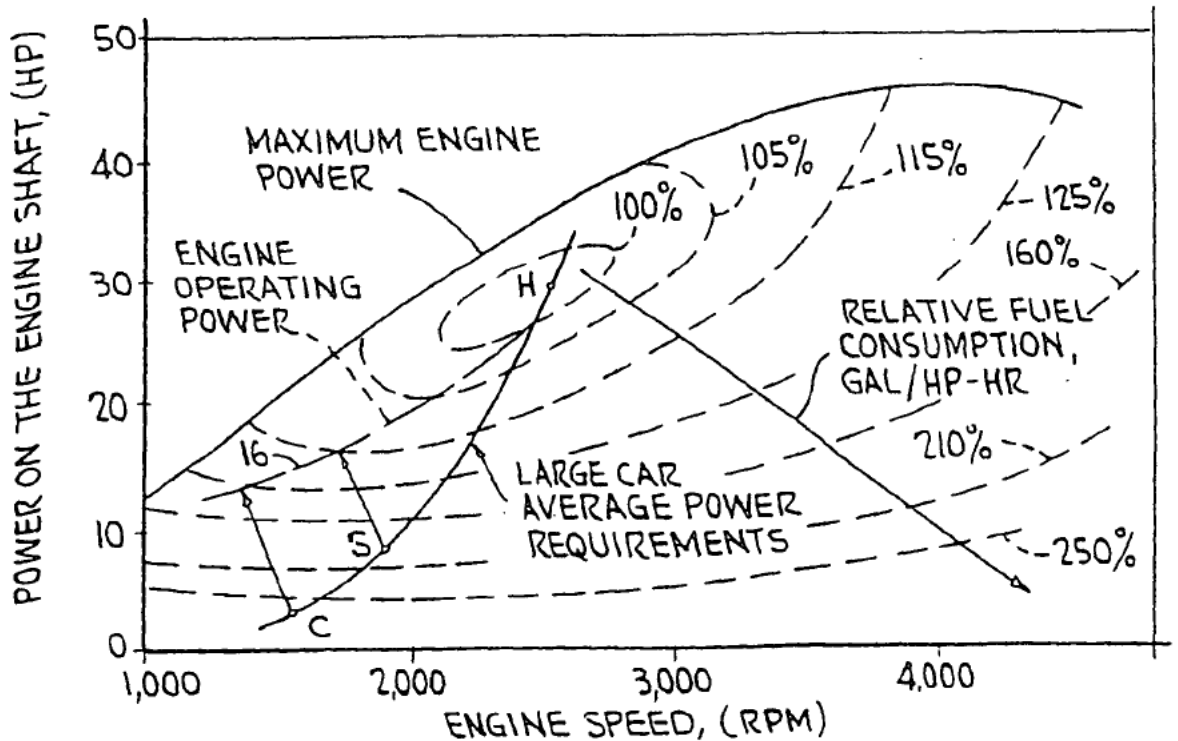


FIG. 2



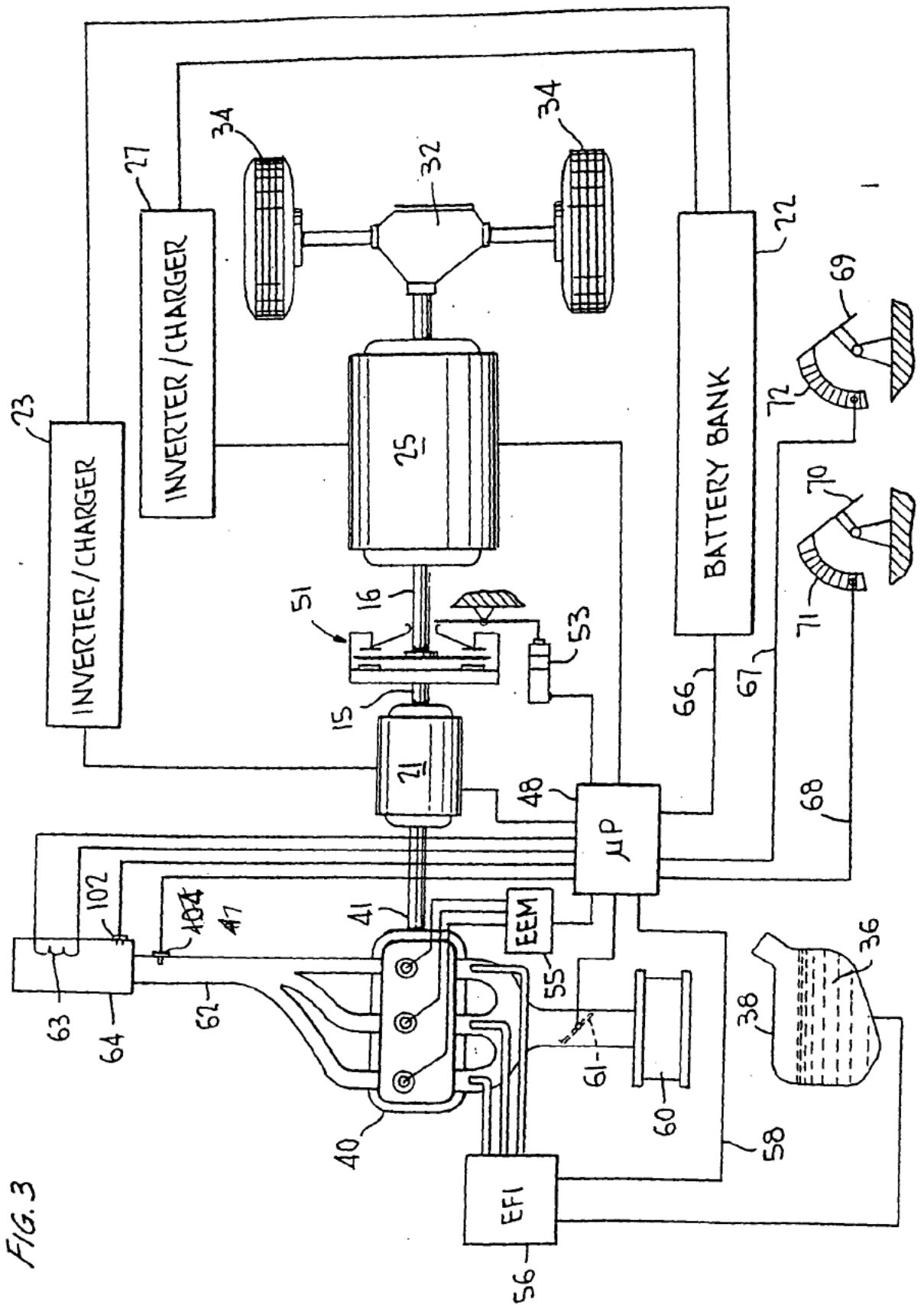


FIG. 3

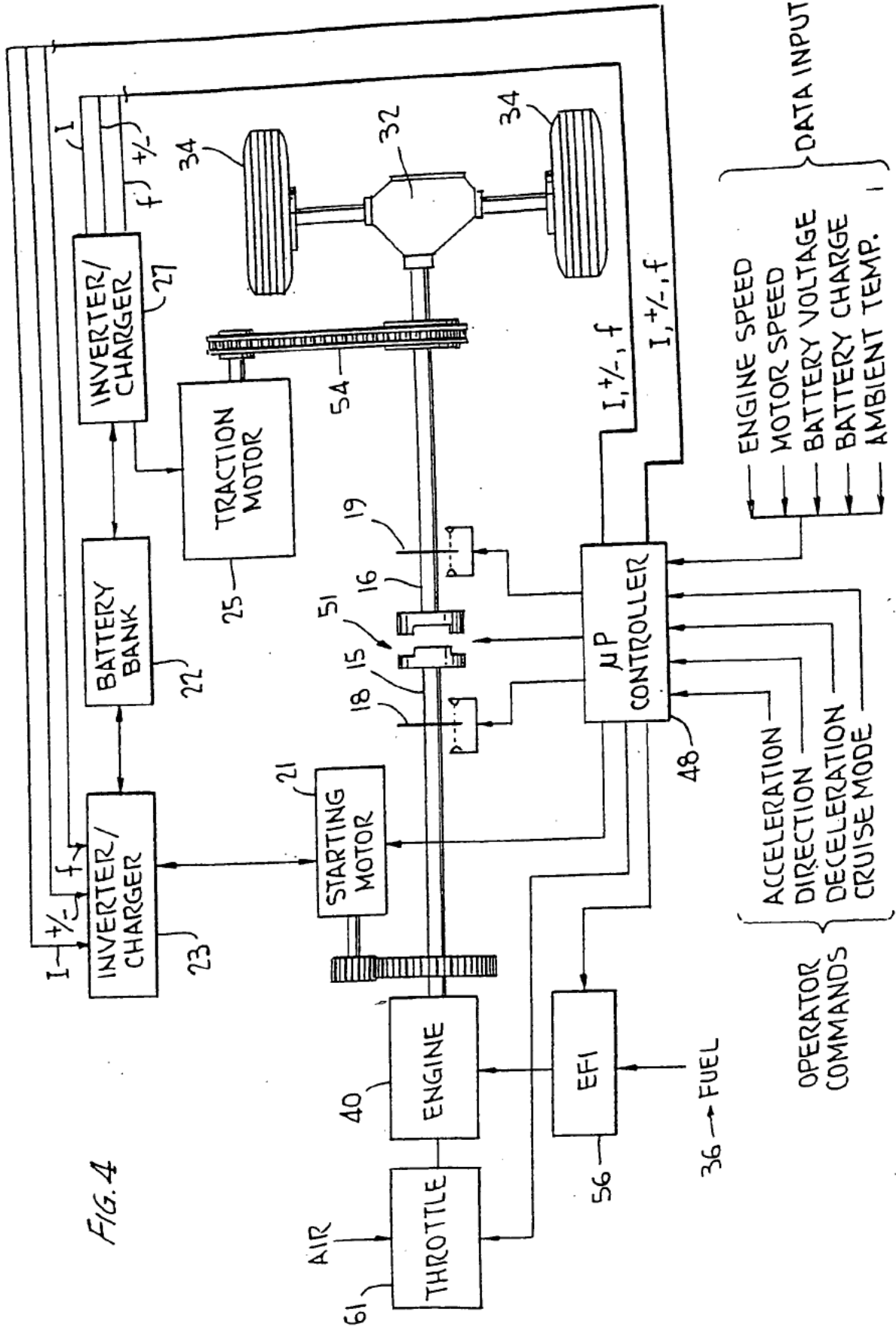


FIG. 4

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

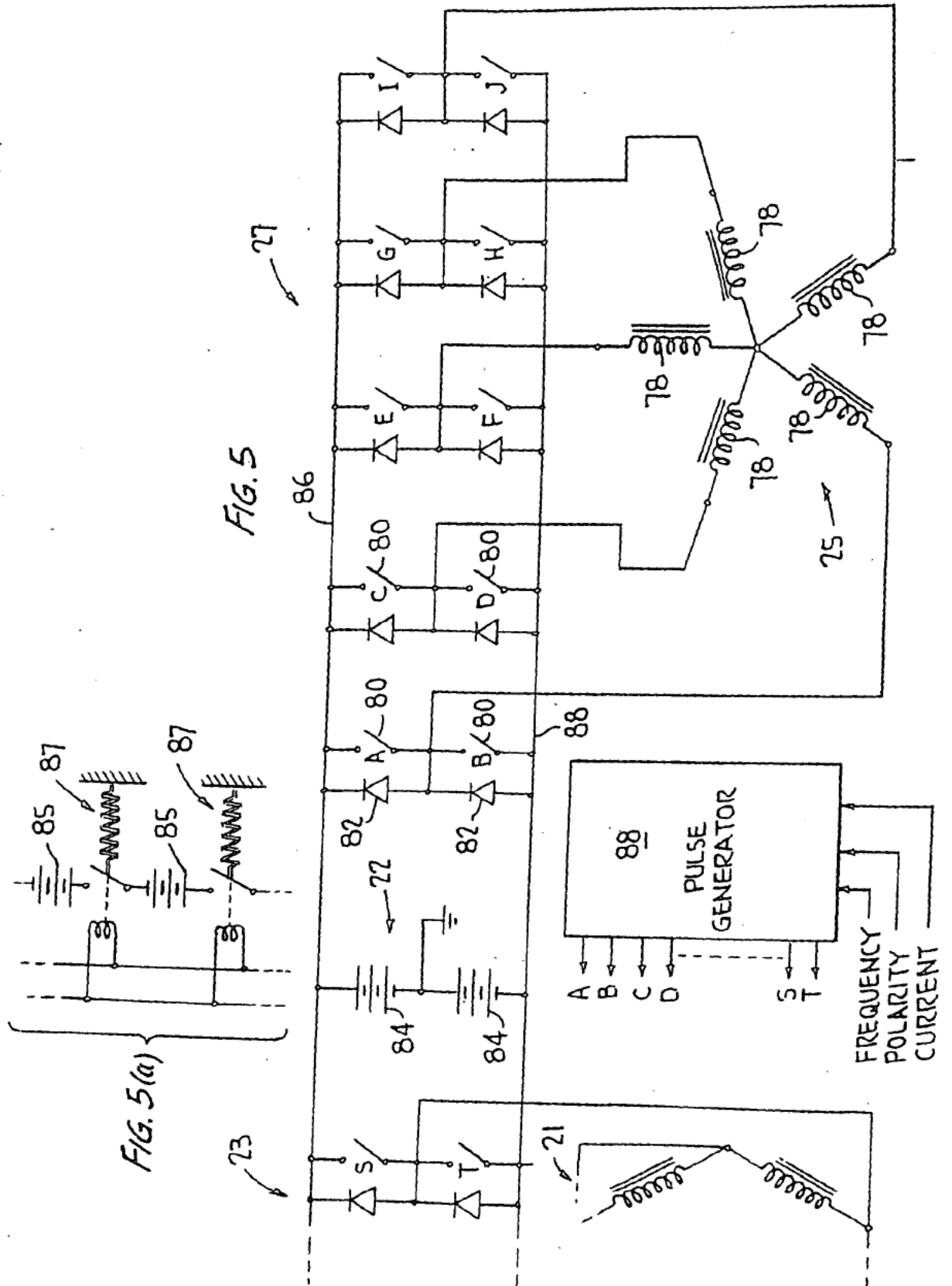


FIG. 6

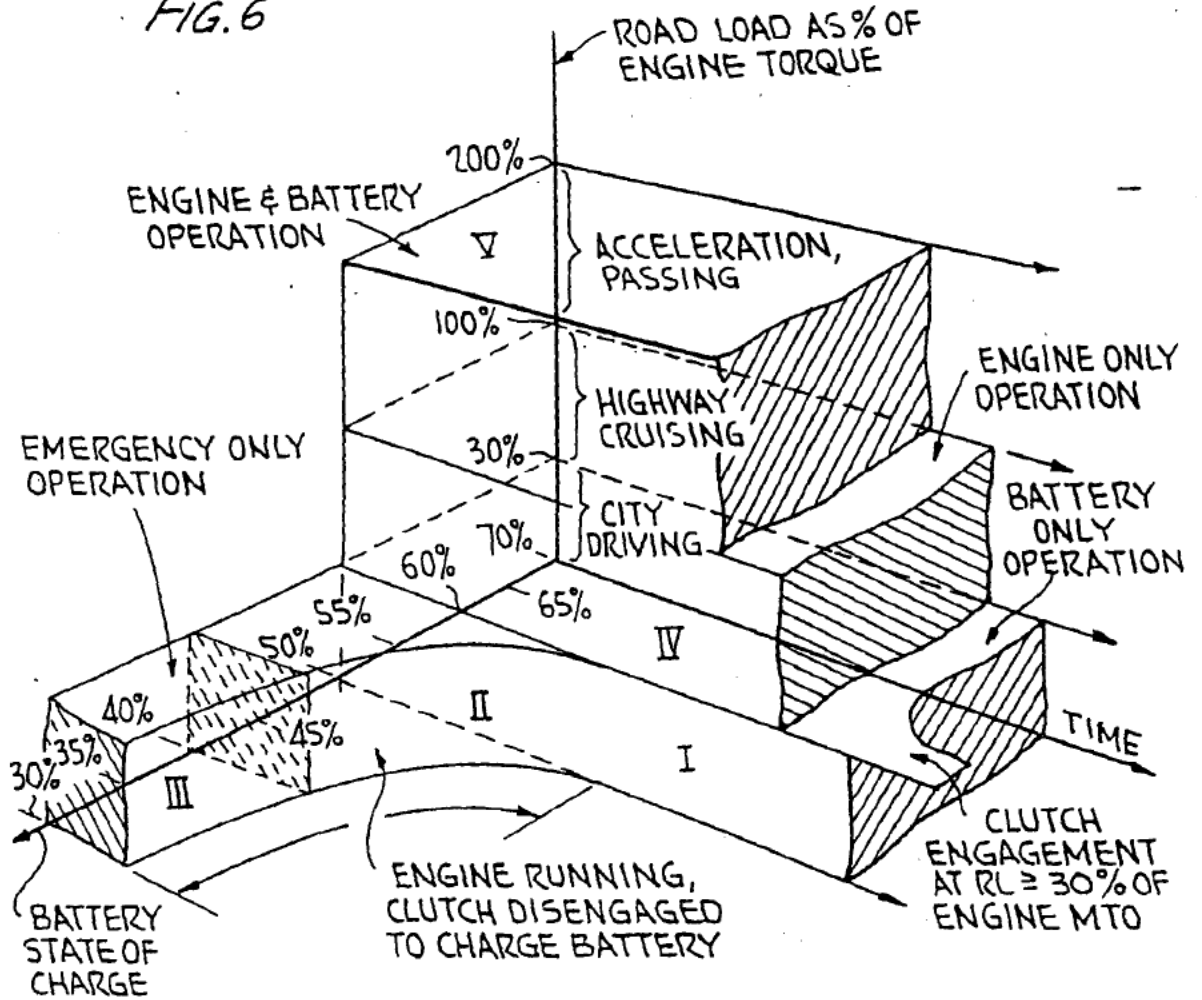
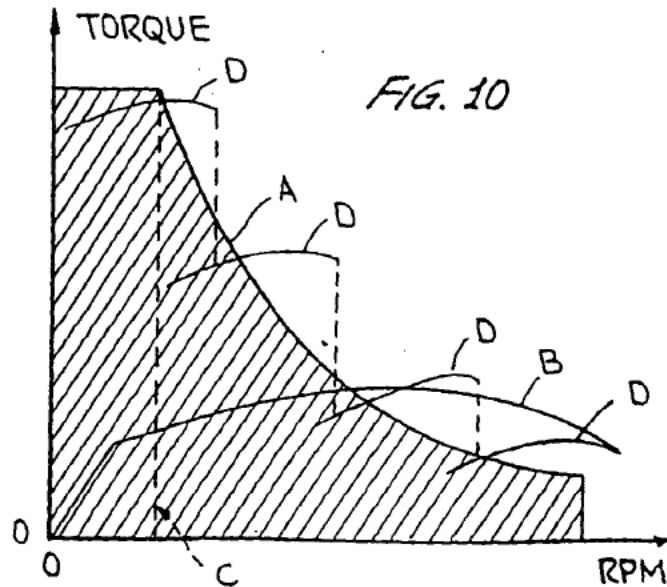


FIG. 10



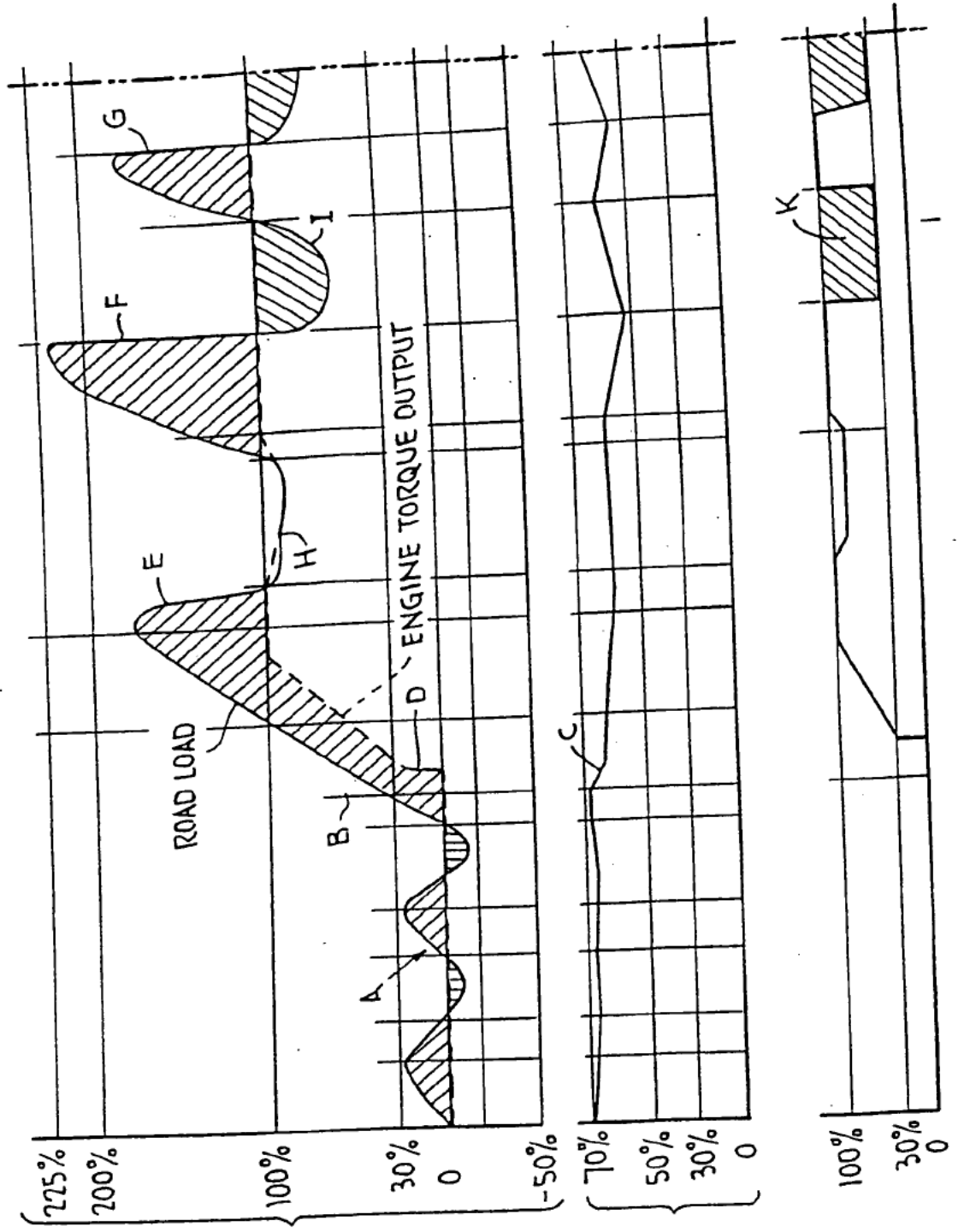


FIG. 7(a)
 ROAD LOAD AS %
 OF MAX. ENGINE
 TORQUE OUTPUT
 (% MTO)

FIG. 7(b)
 BATTERY BANK
 STATE OF CHARGE
 (BSC)

FIG. 7(c)
 ENGINE TORQUE
 OUTPUT

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

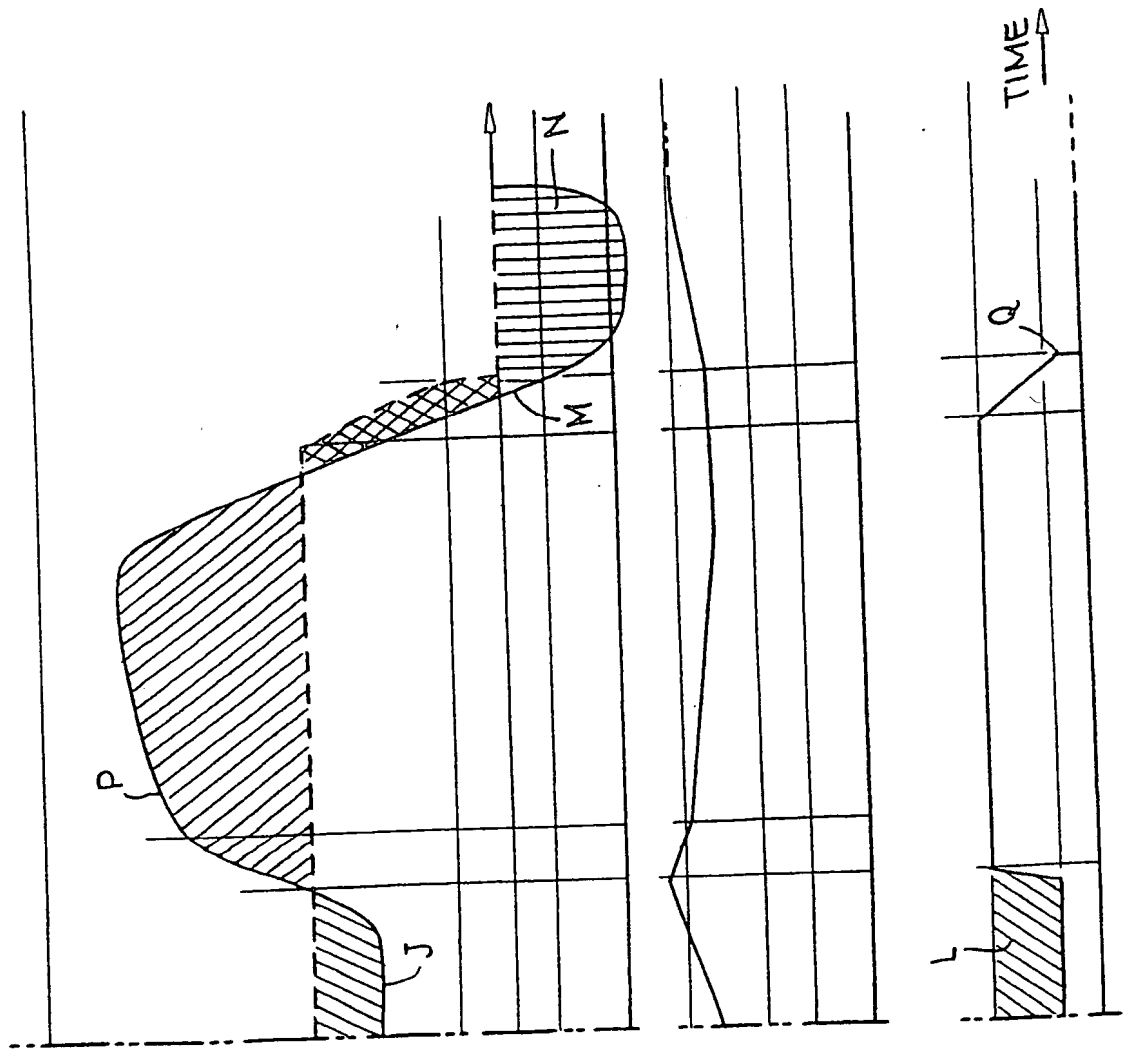


FIG. 7(a)
(CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(b)
(CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(c)
(CONTINUED)

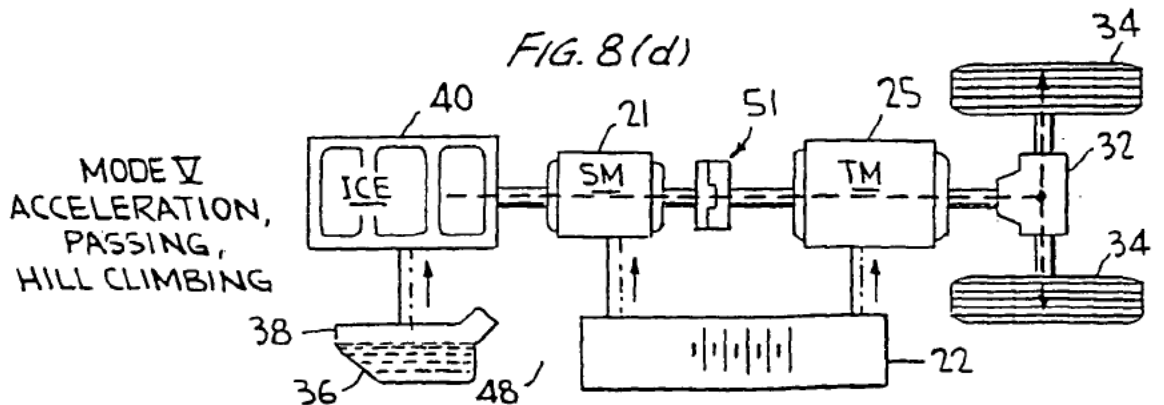
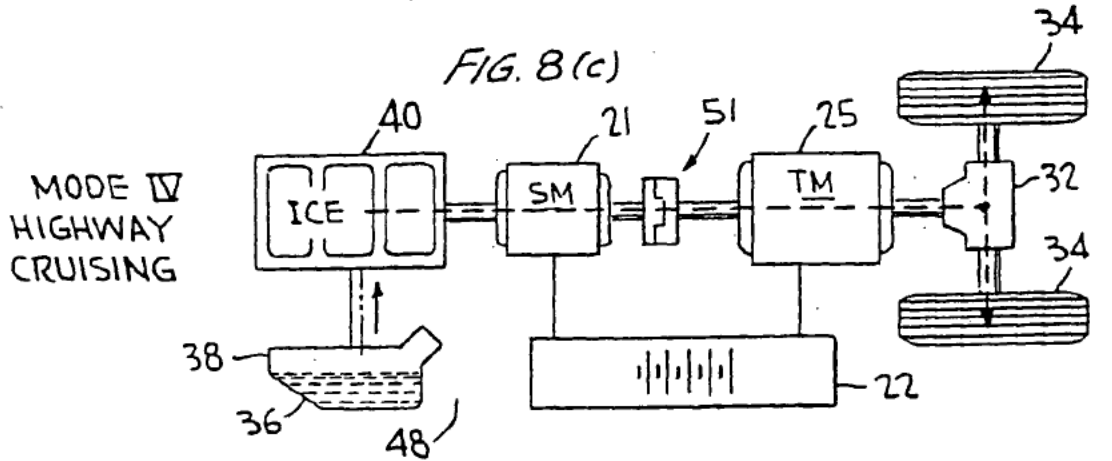
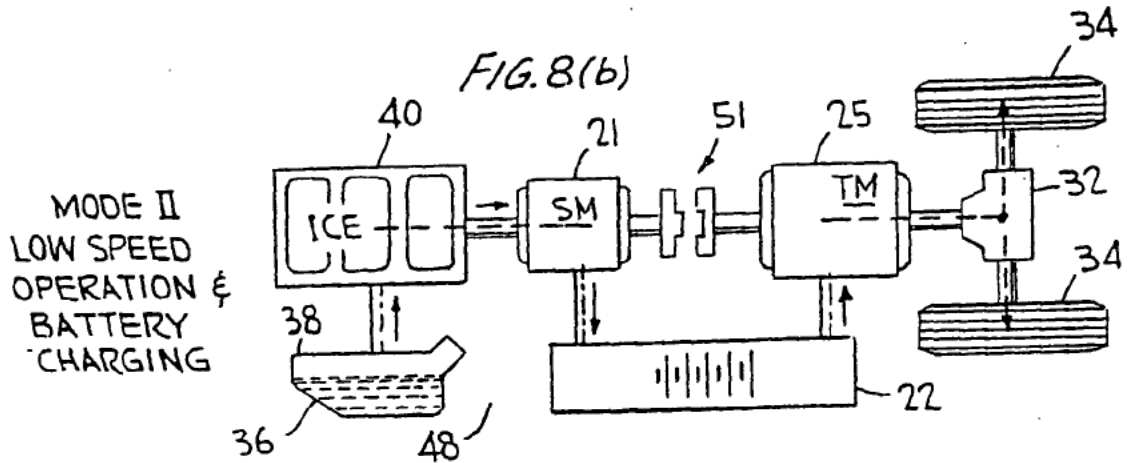
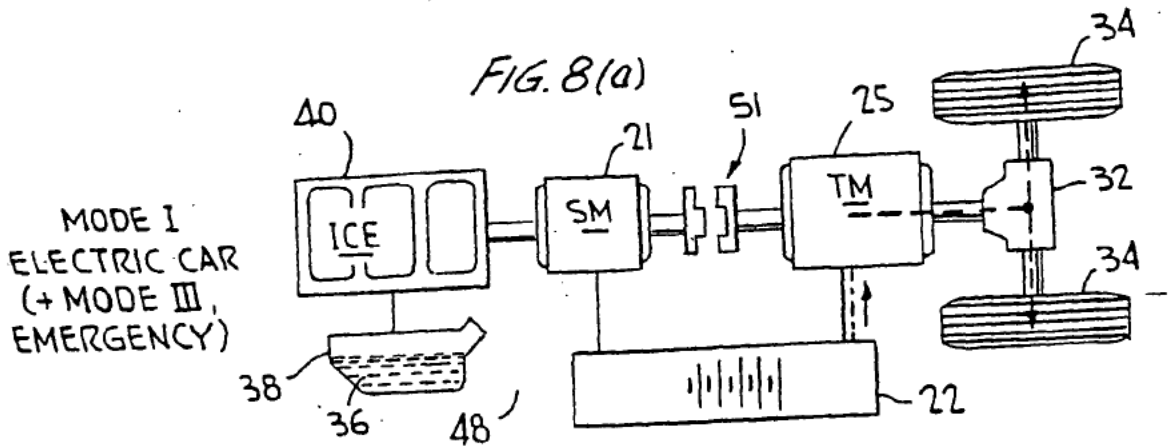


FIG. 9

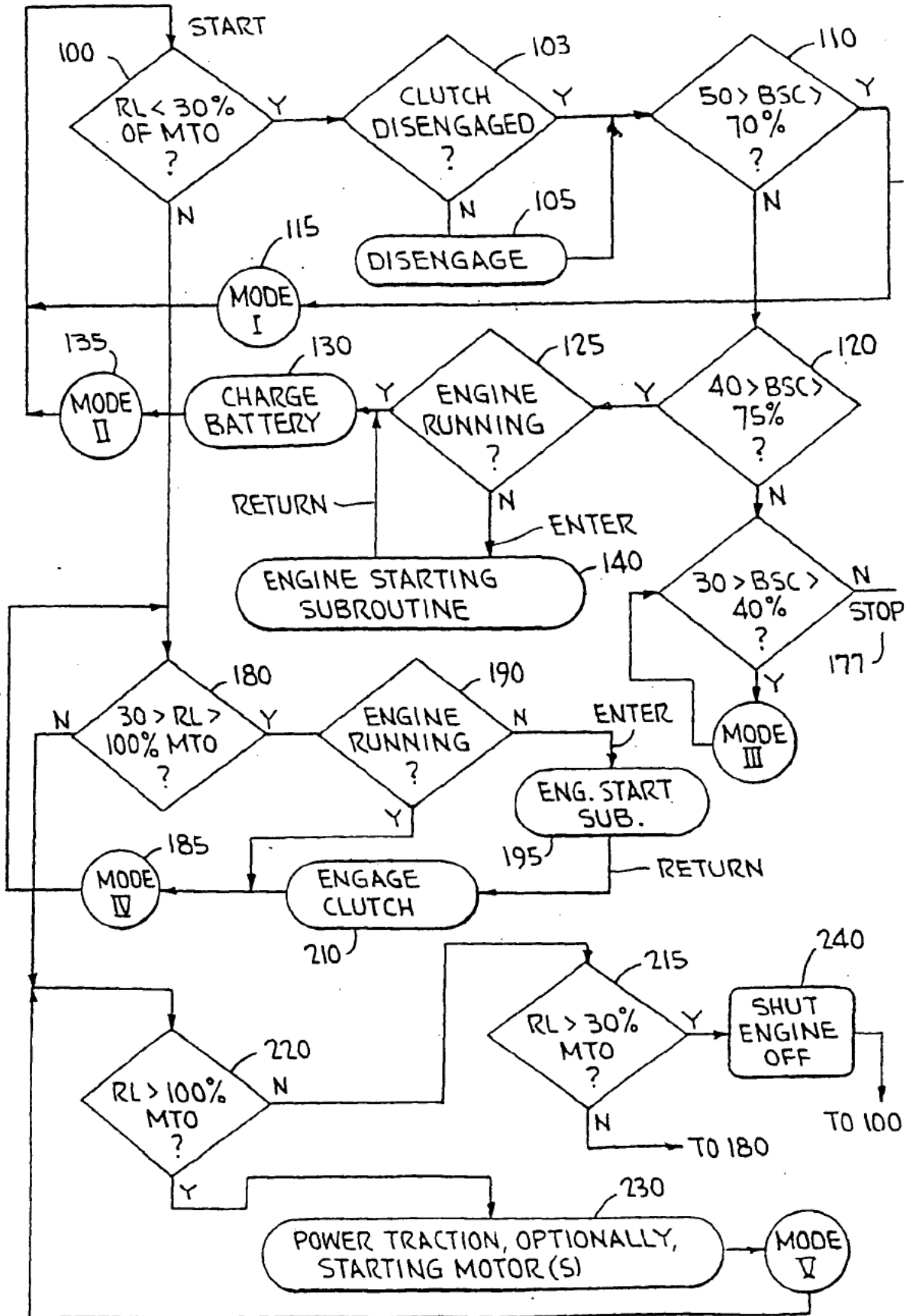


FIG. 9(a)
ENGINE STARTING
SUBROUTINE

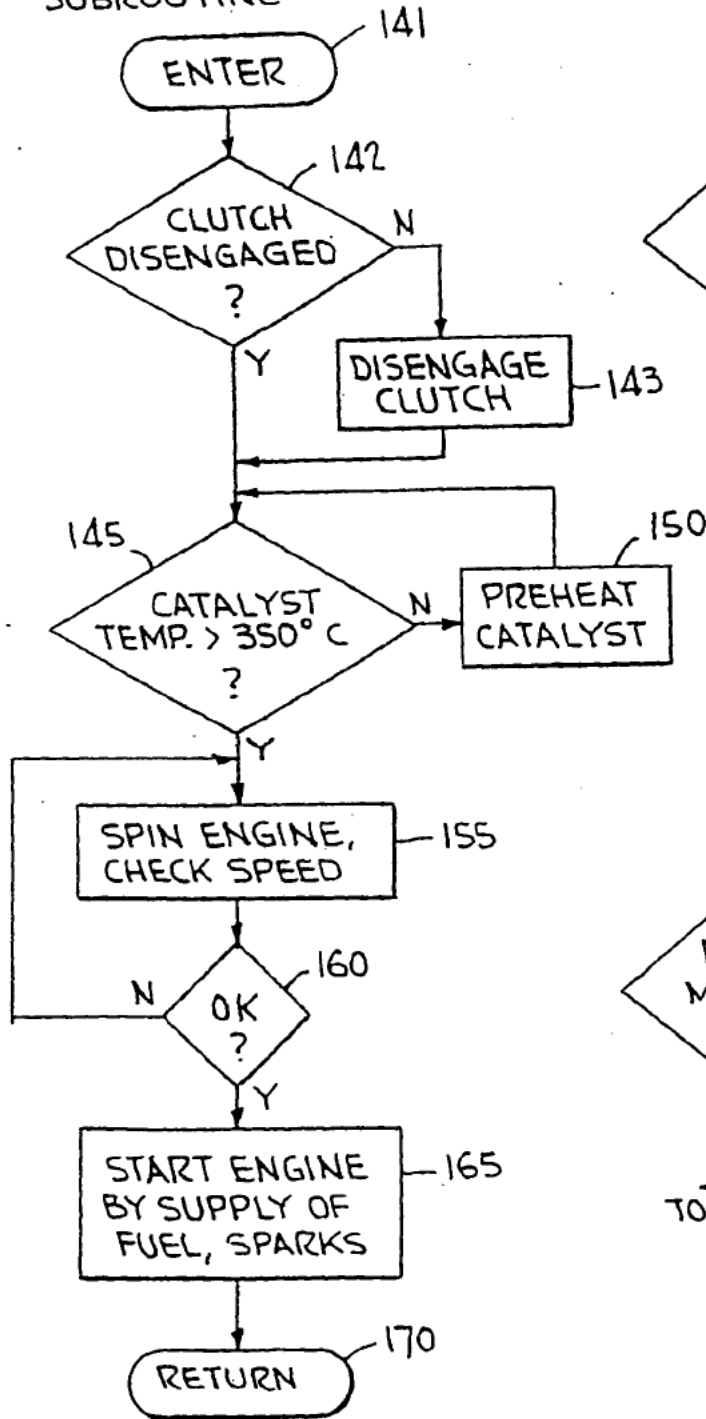


FIG. 9(b)

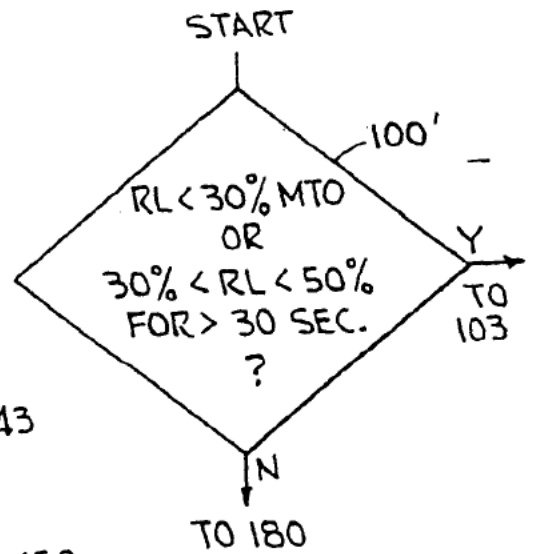
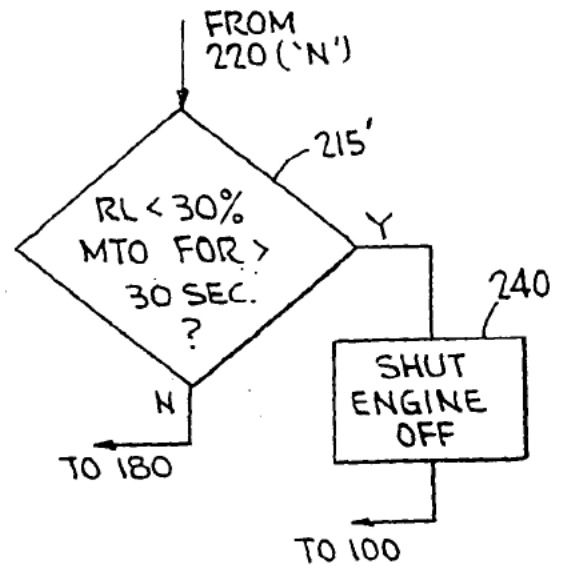


FIG. 9(c)



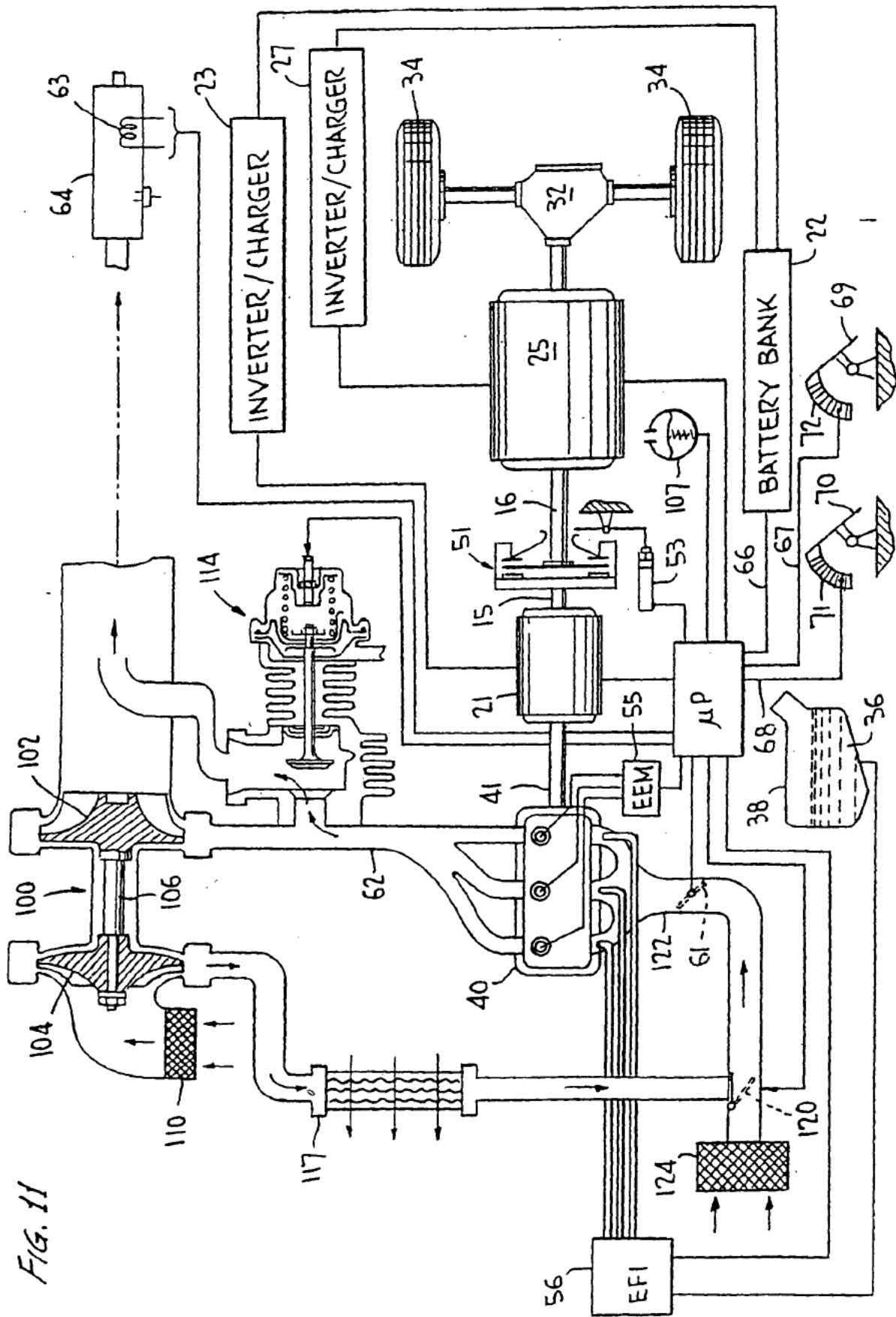


FIG. 11

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

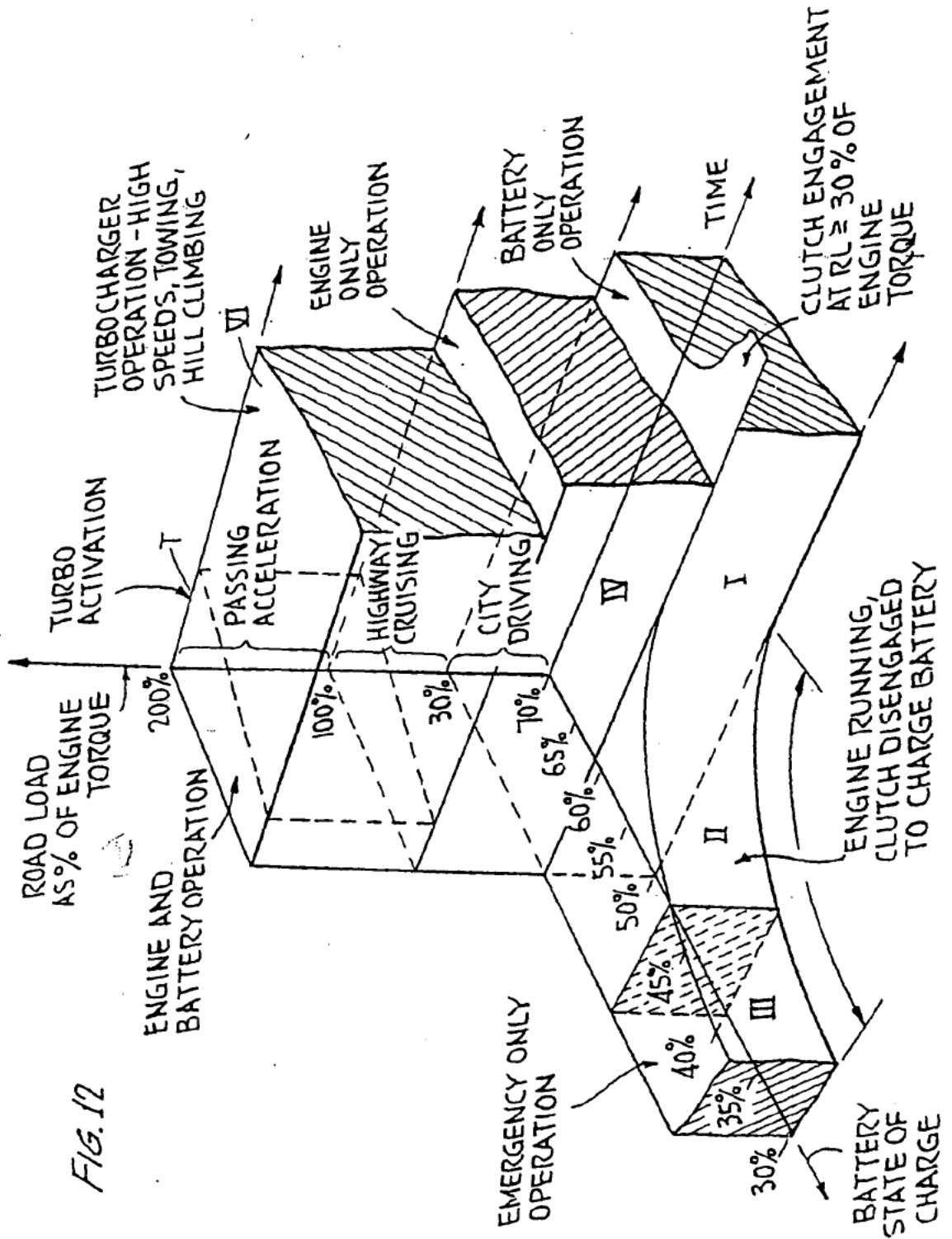


FIG. 12

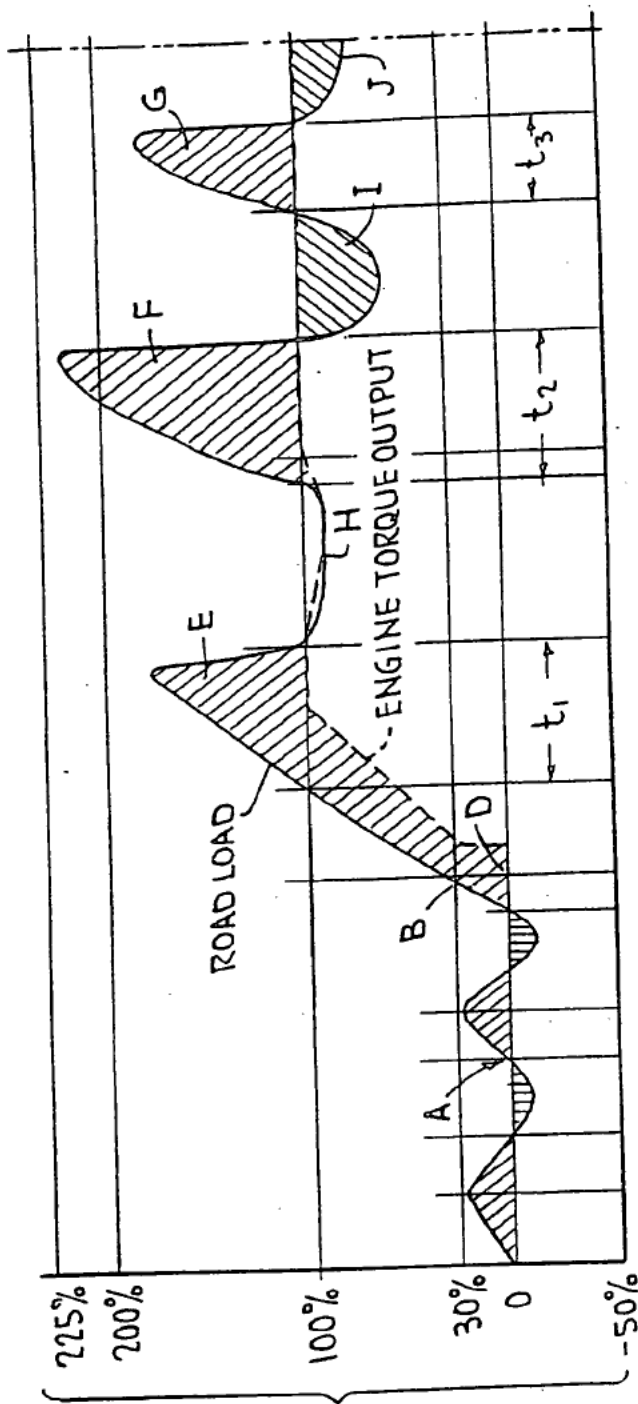


FIG. 13(a)
ROAD LOAD AS %
OF ENGINE'S MAX.
TORQUE (NORMALLY
ASPIRATED)

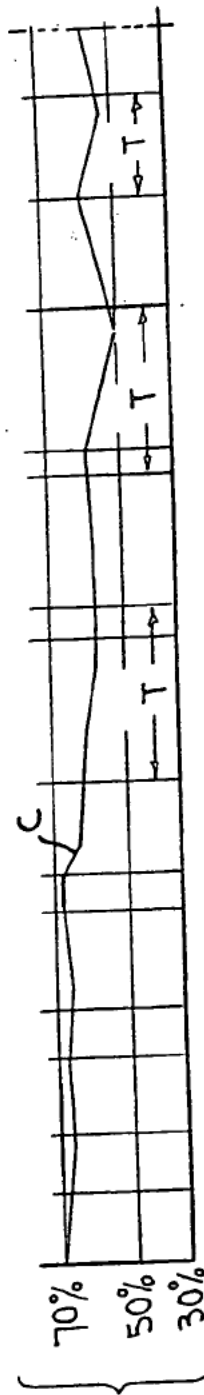


FIG. 13(b)
BATTERY STATE
OF CHARGE

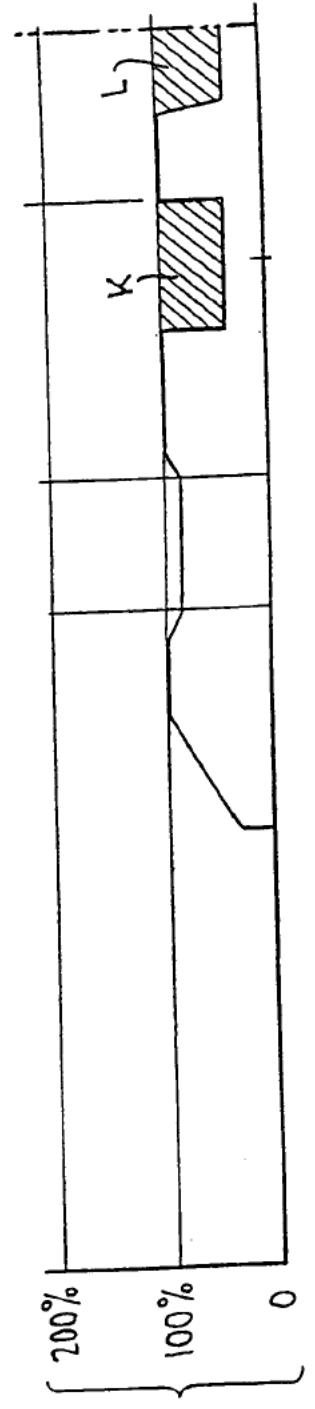


FIG. 13(c)
ENGINE + TURBO-
CHARGER OPERATION

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

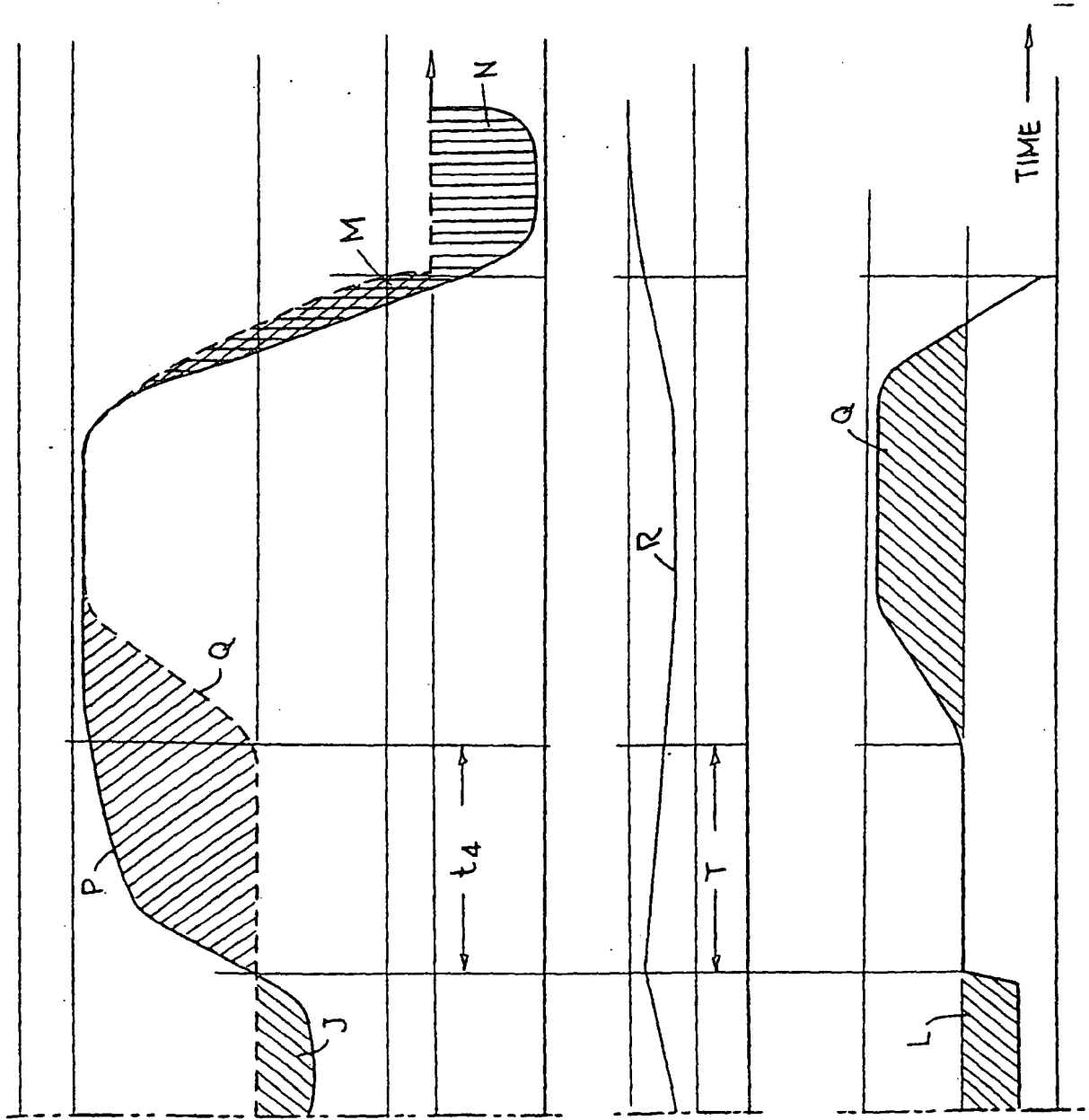


FIG. 13(a)
(CONTINUED)

FIG. 13(b)
(CONTINUED)

FIG. 13(c)
(CONTINUED)

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

15/17

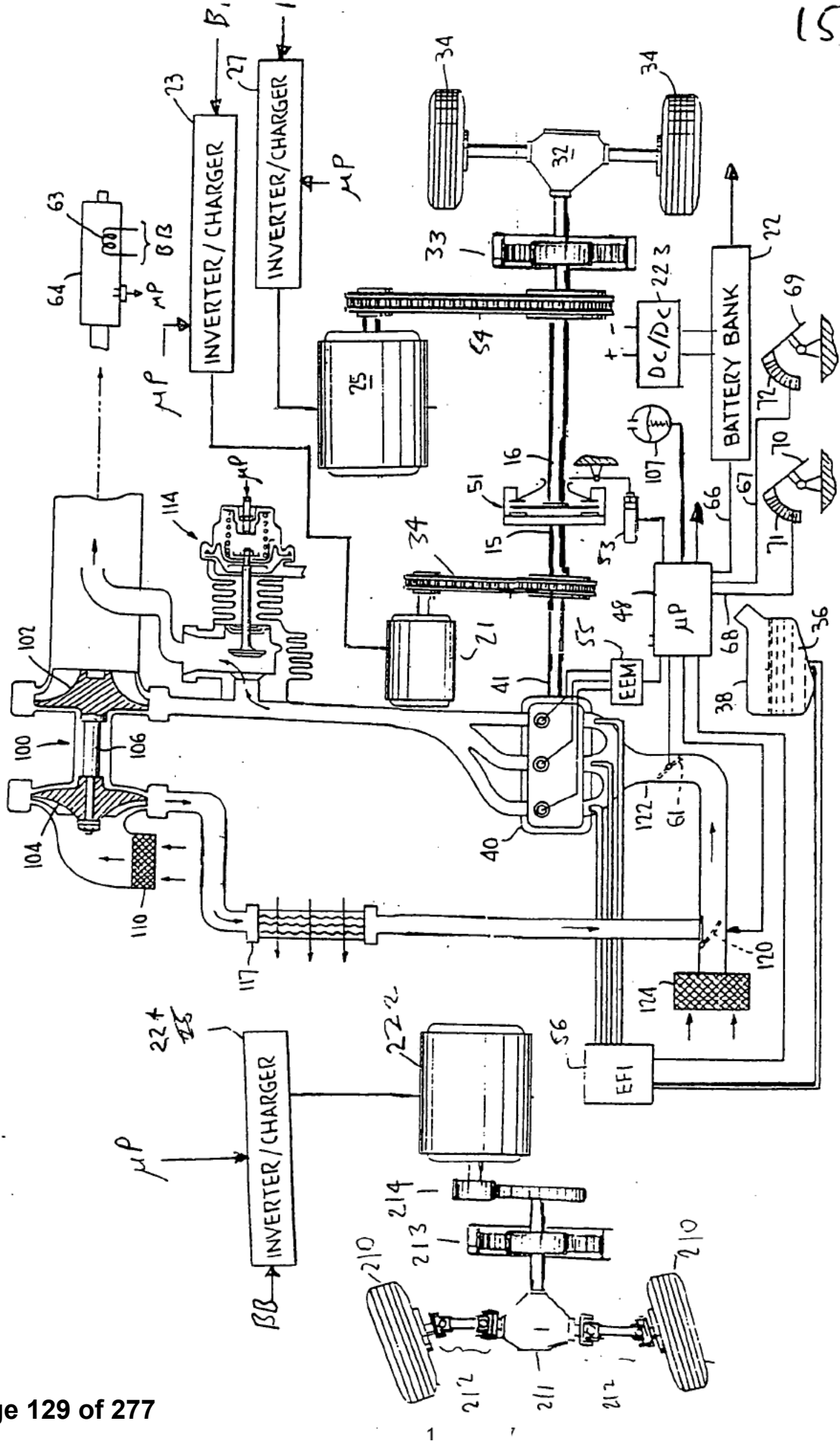


FIG. 14

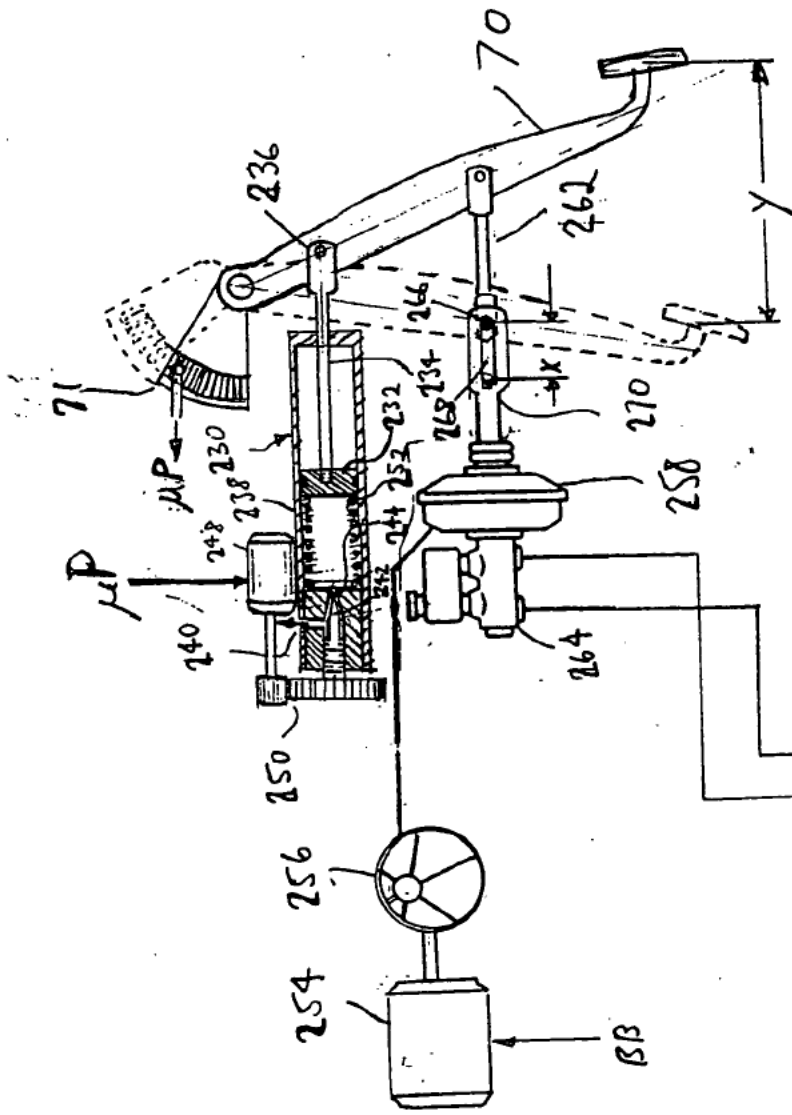
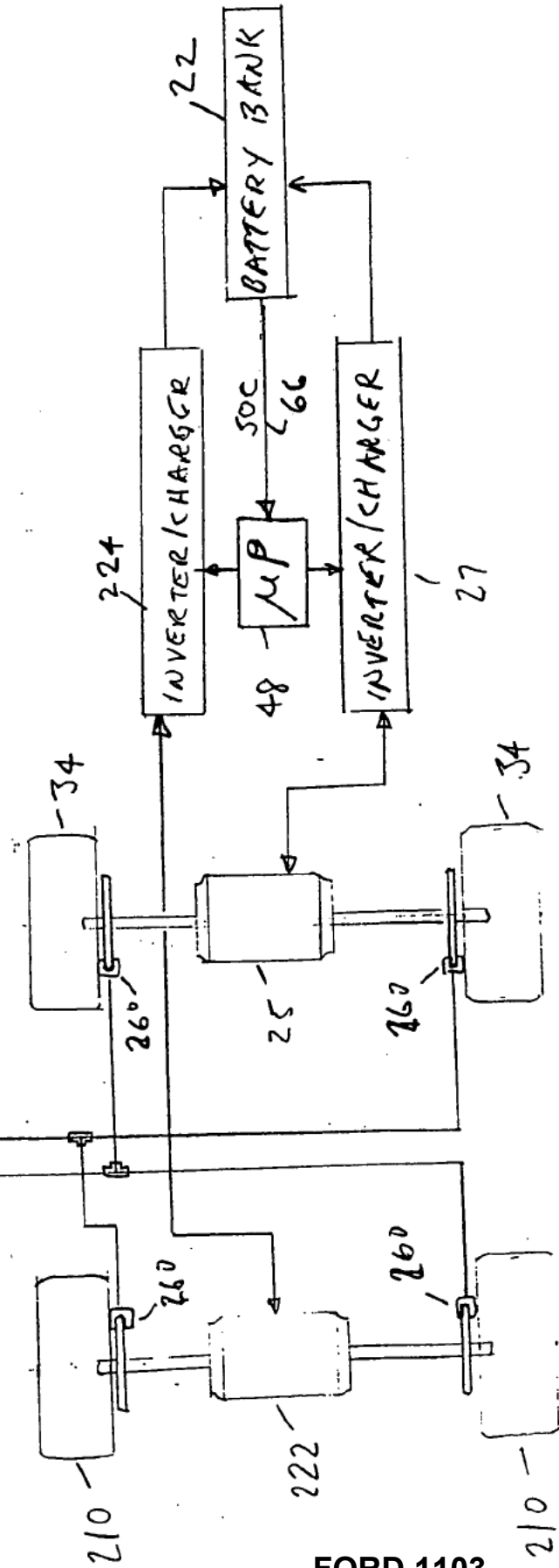


FIG. 15



17/17

FIG 16

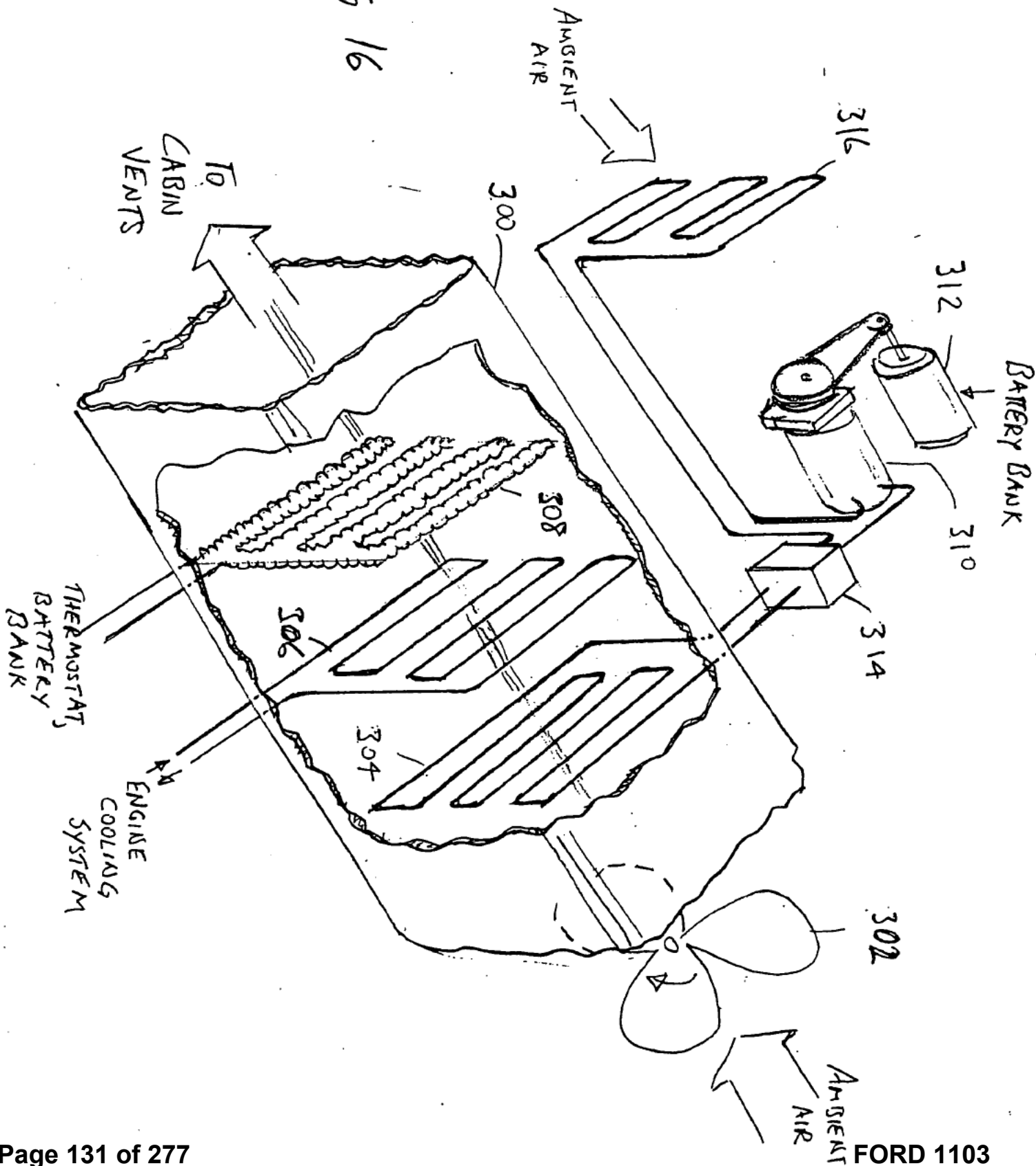


FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

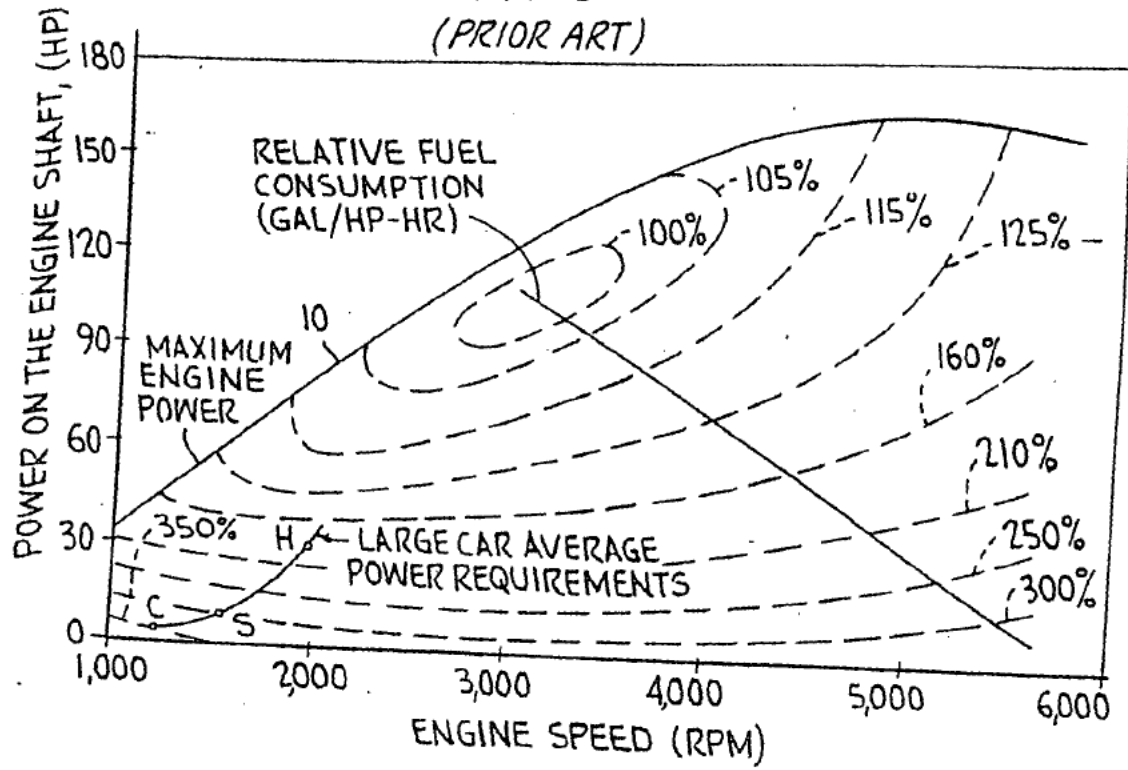
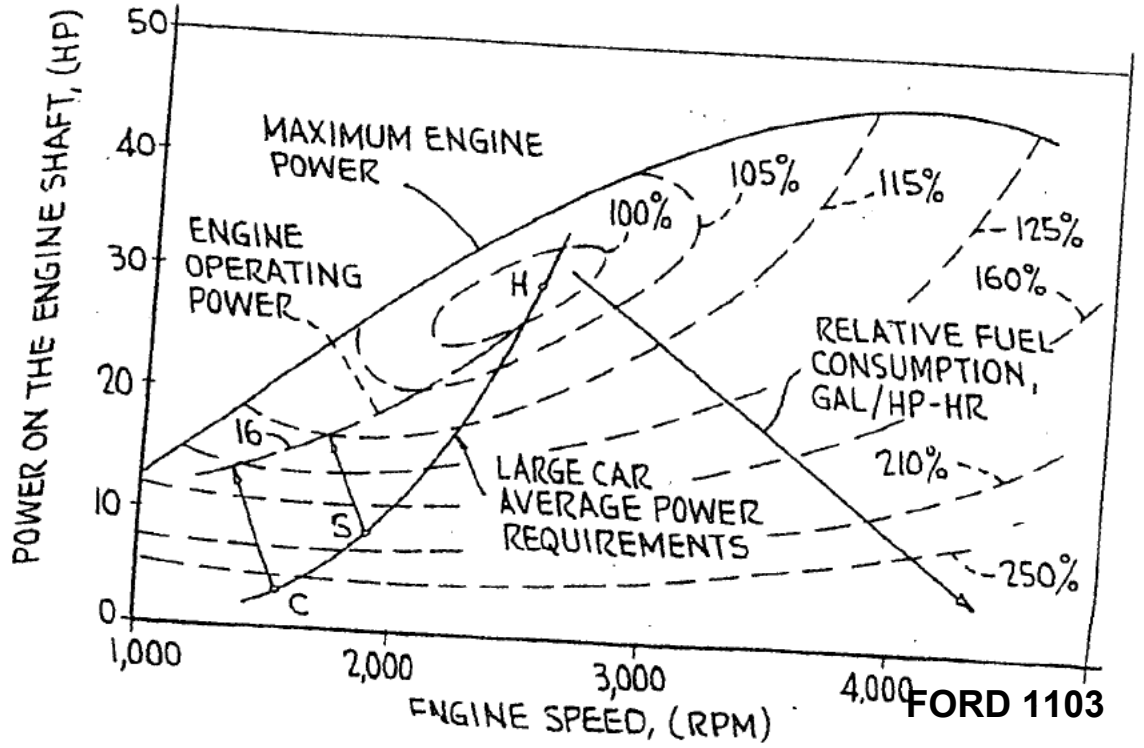


FIG. 2



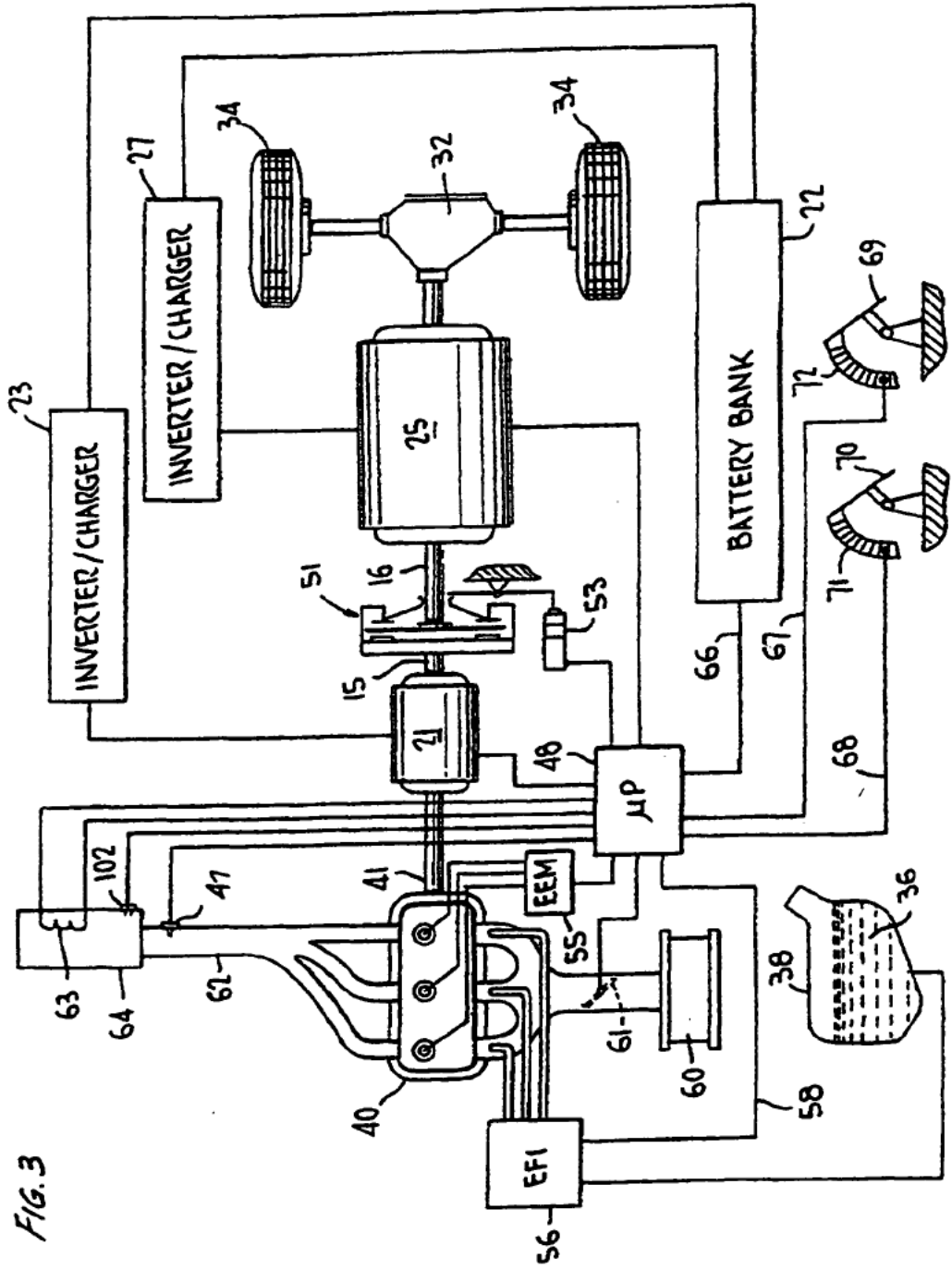
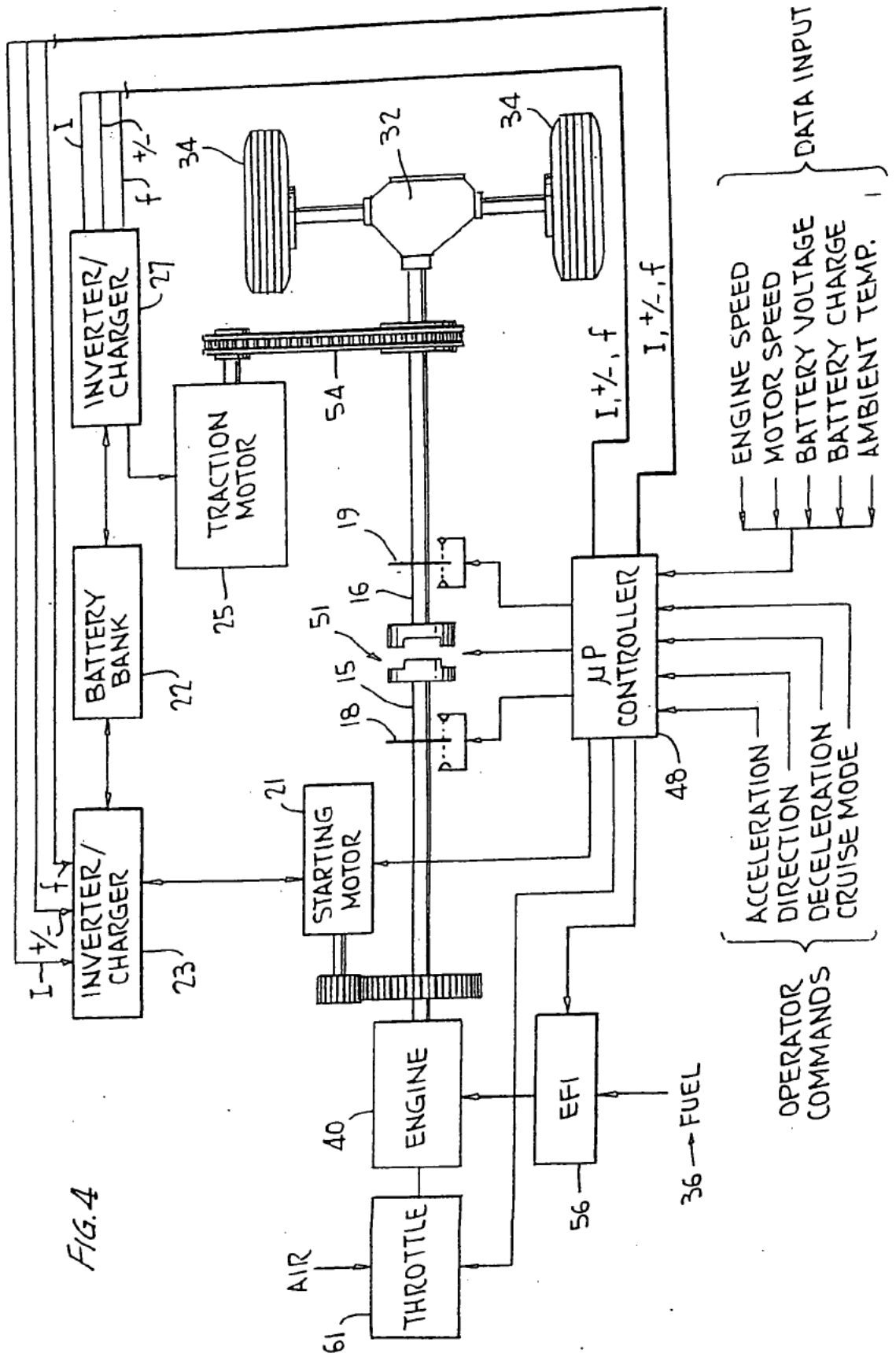


FIG. 3



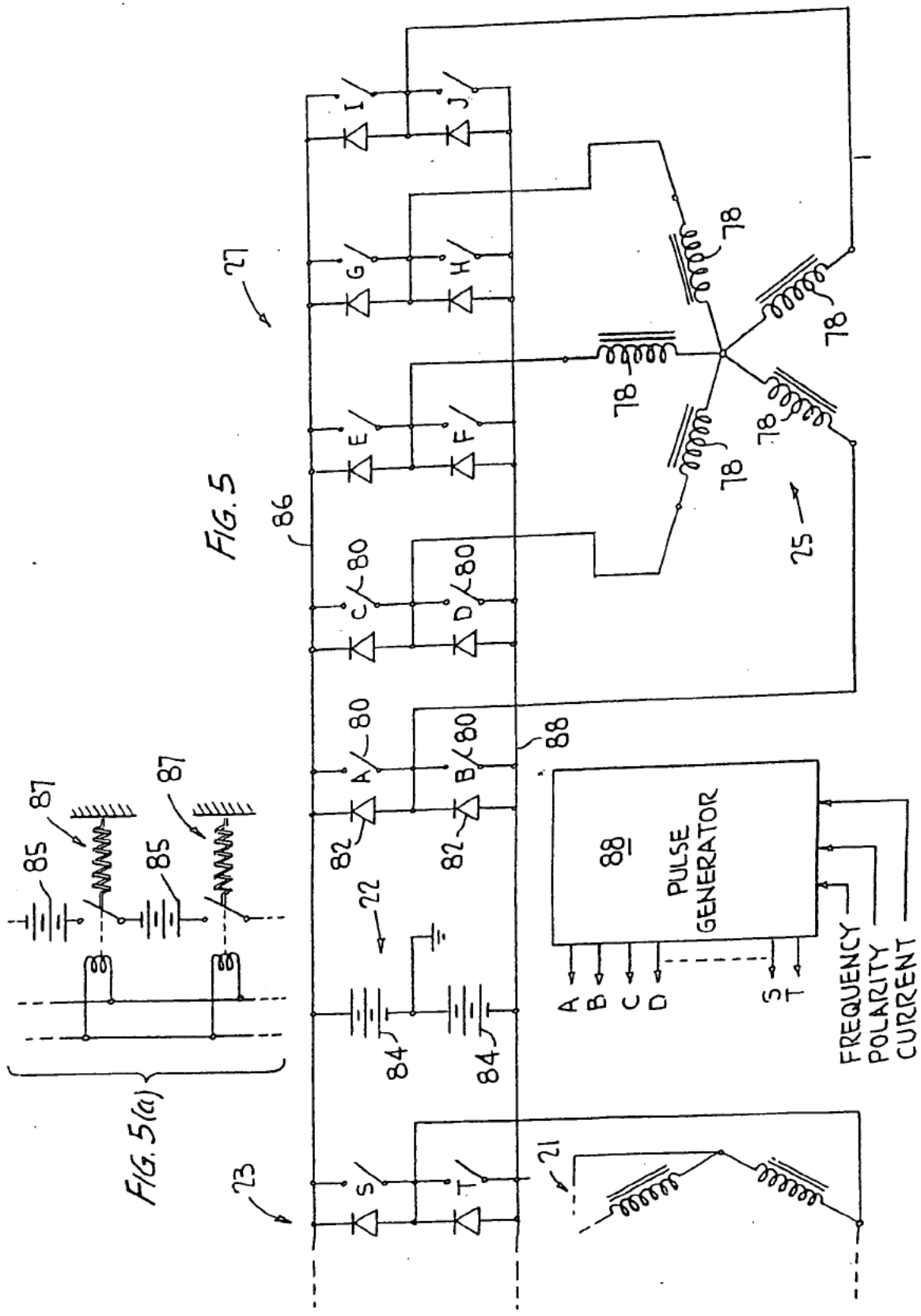


FIG. 6

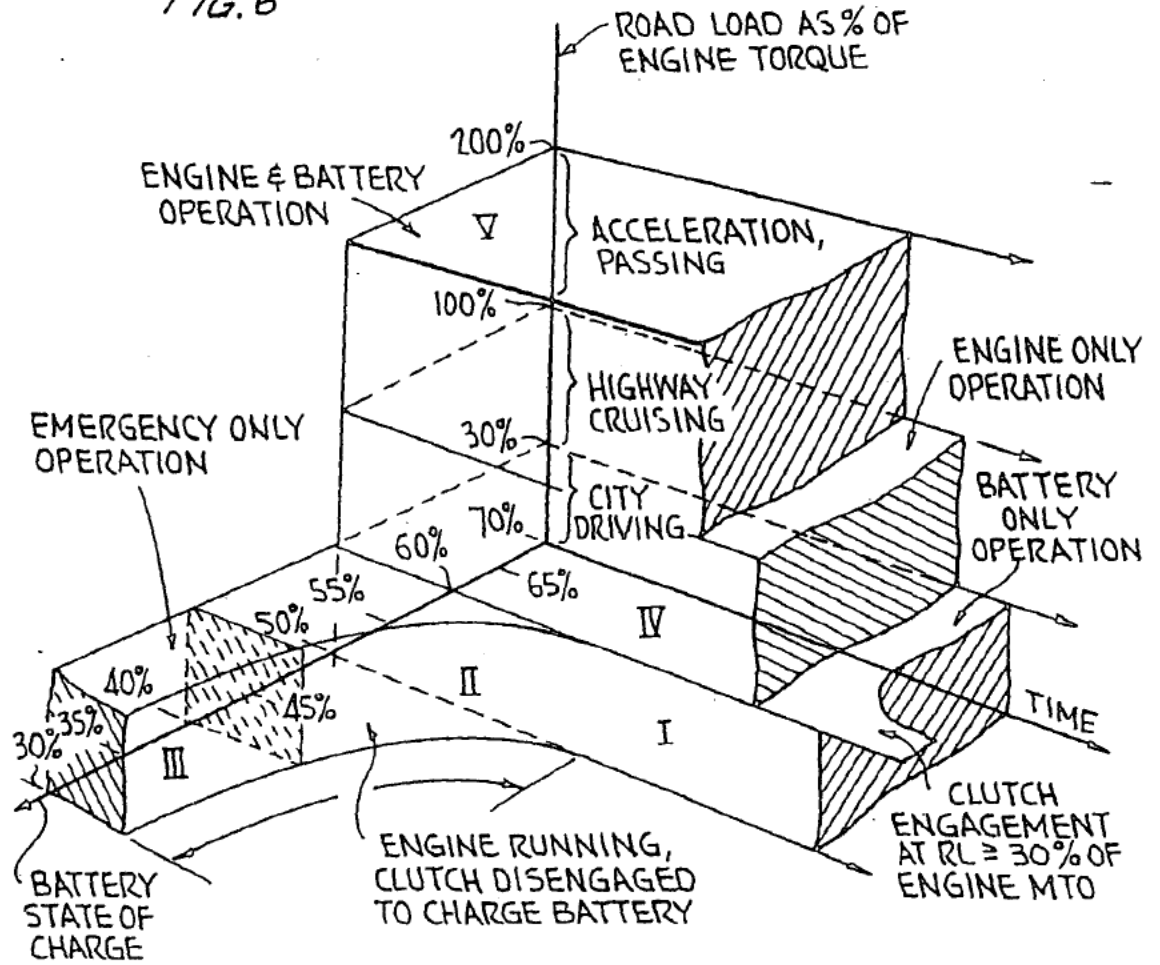
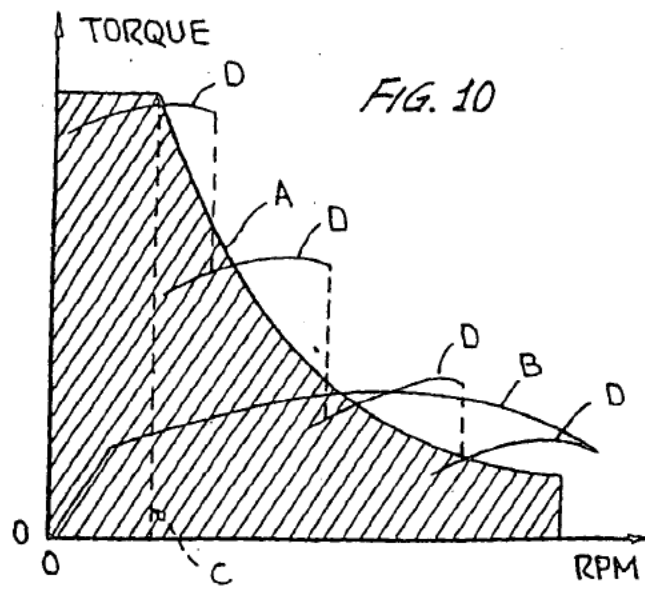


FIG. 10



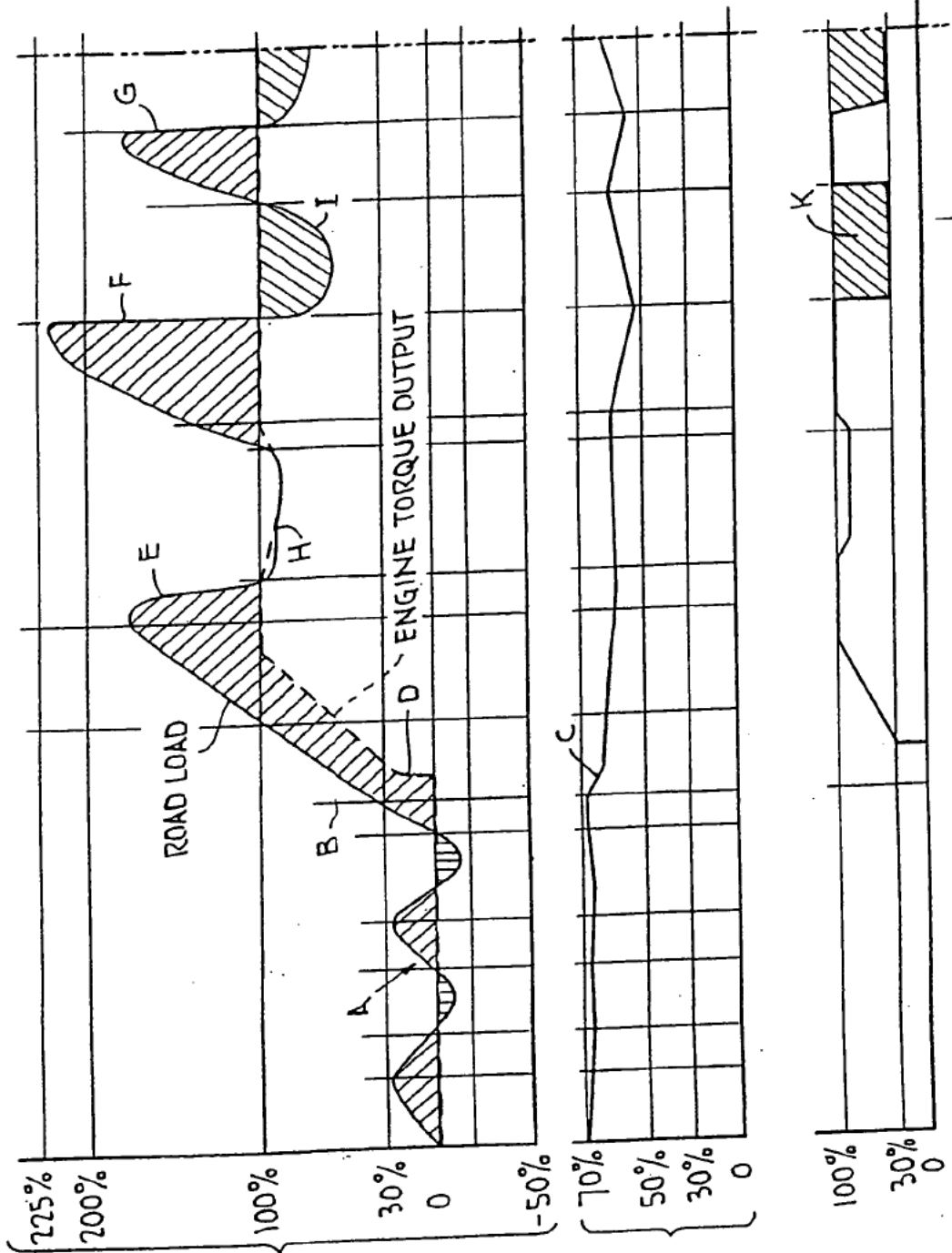


FIG. 7(a)
ROAD LOAD AS %
OF MAX. ENGINE
TORQUE OUTPUT
(% MTO)

FIG. 7(b)
BATTERY BANK
STATE OF CHARGE
(BSC)

FIG. 7(c)
ENGINE TORQUE
OUTPUT

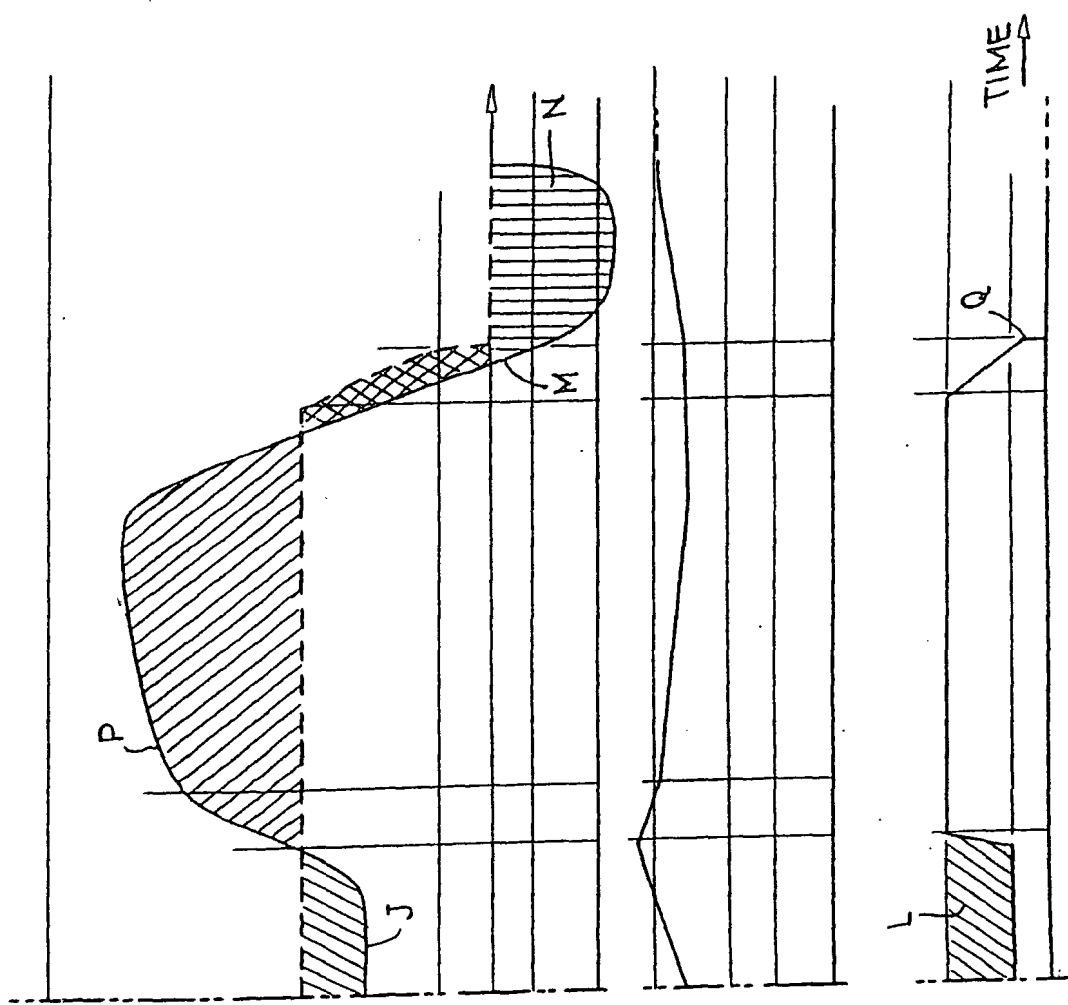


FIG. 7(a)
(CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(b)
(CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(c)
(CONTINUED)

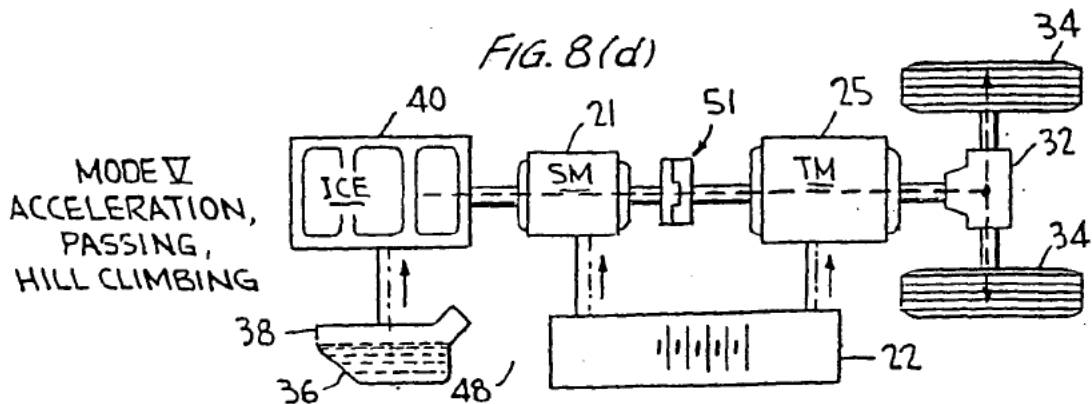
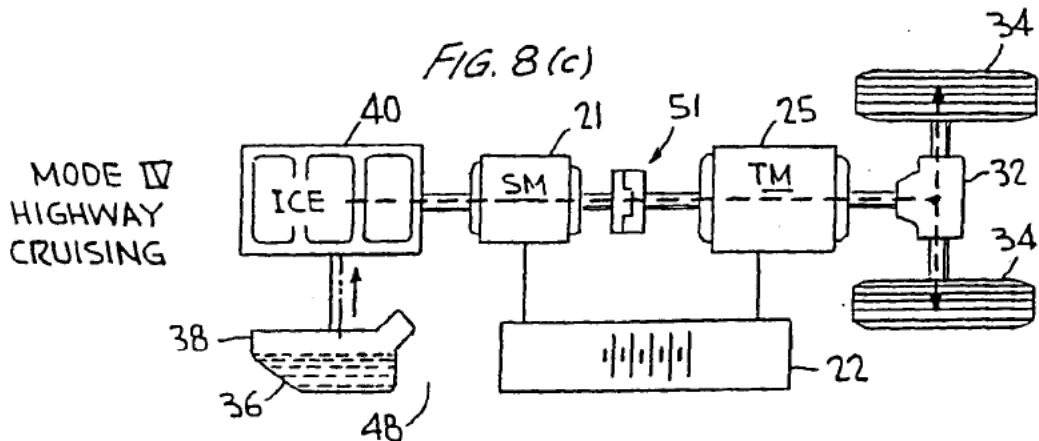
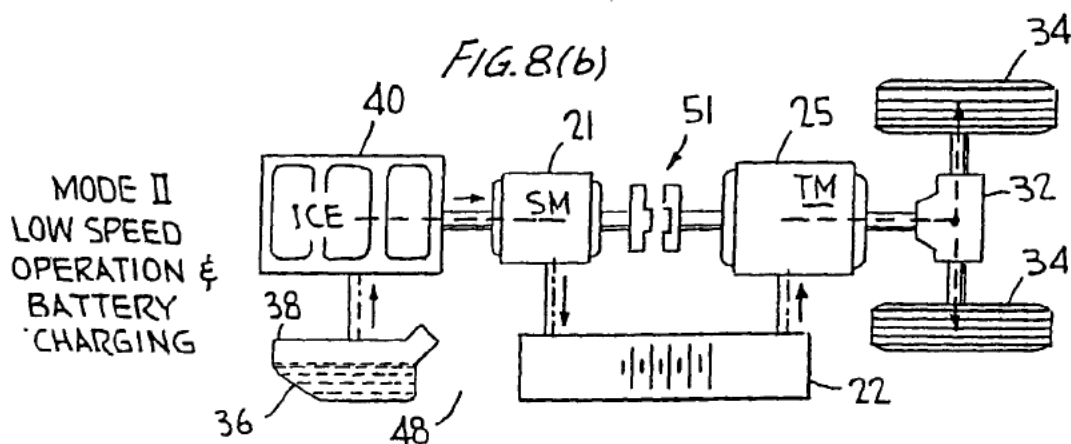
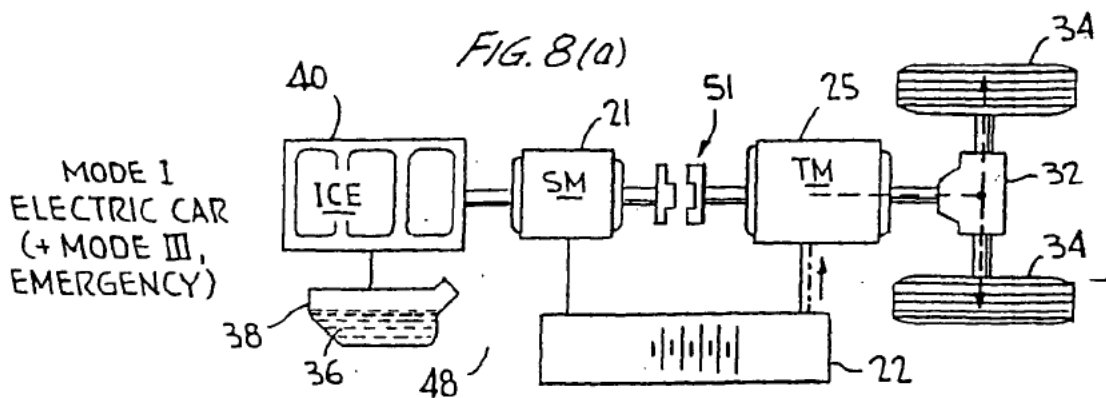


FIG. 9

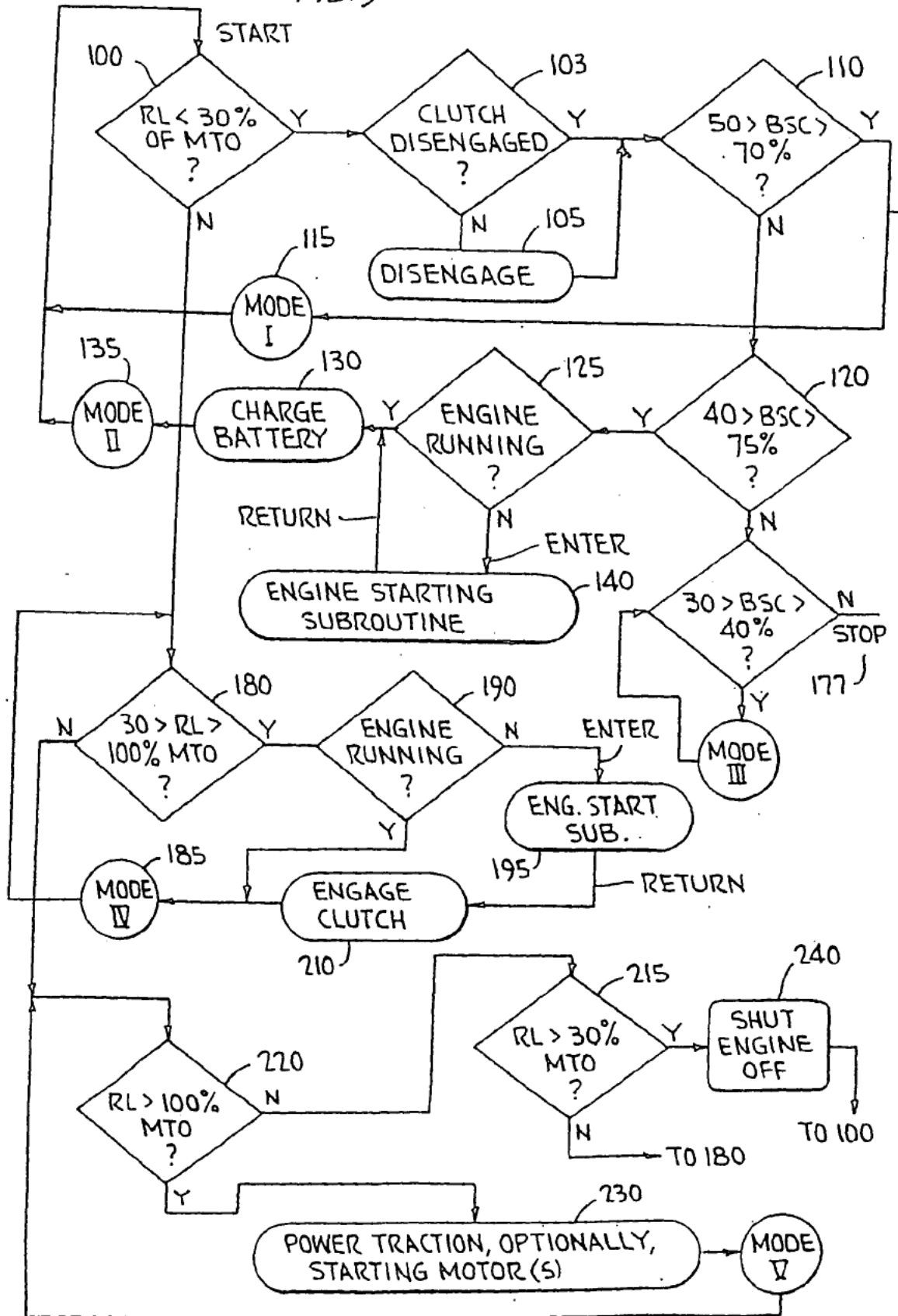


FIG. 9(a)
ENGINE STARTING
SUBROUTINE

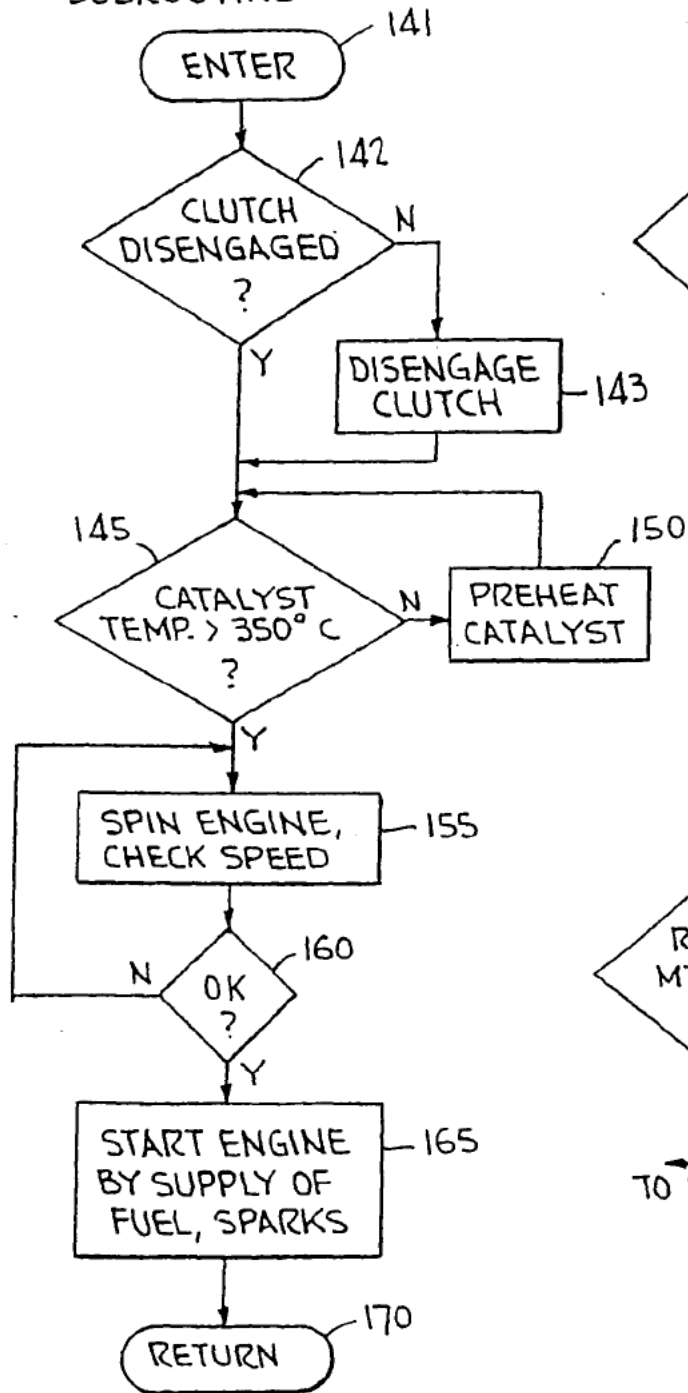


FIG. 9(b)

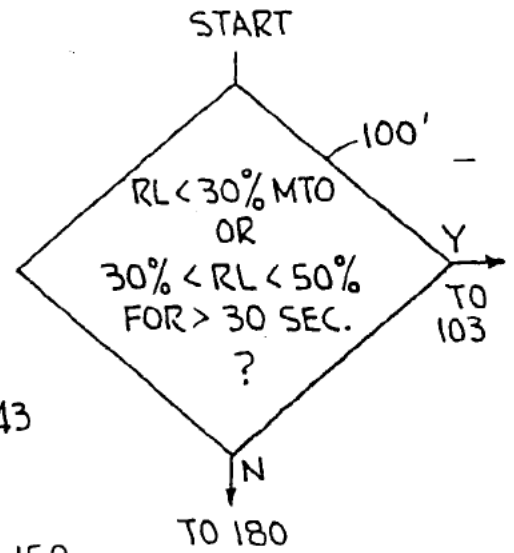
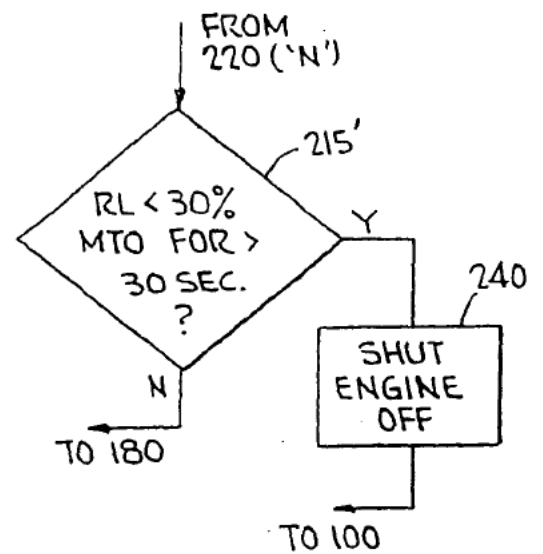


FIG. 9(c)



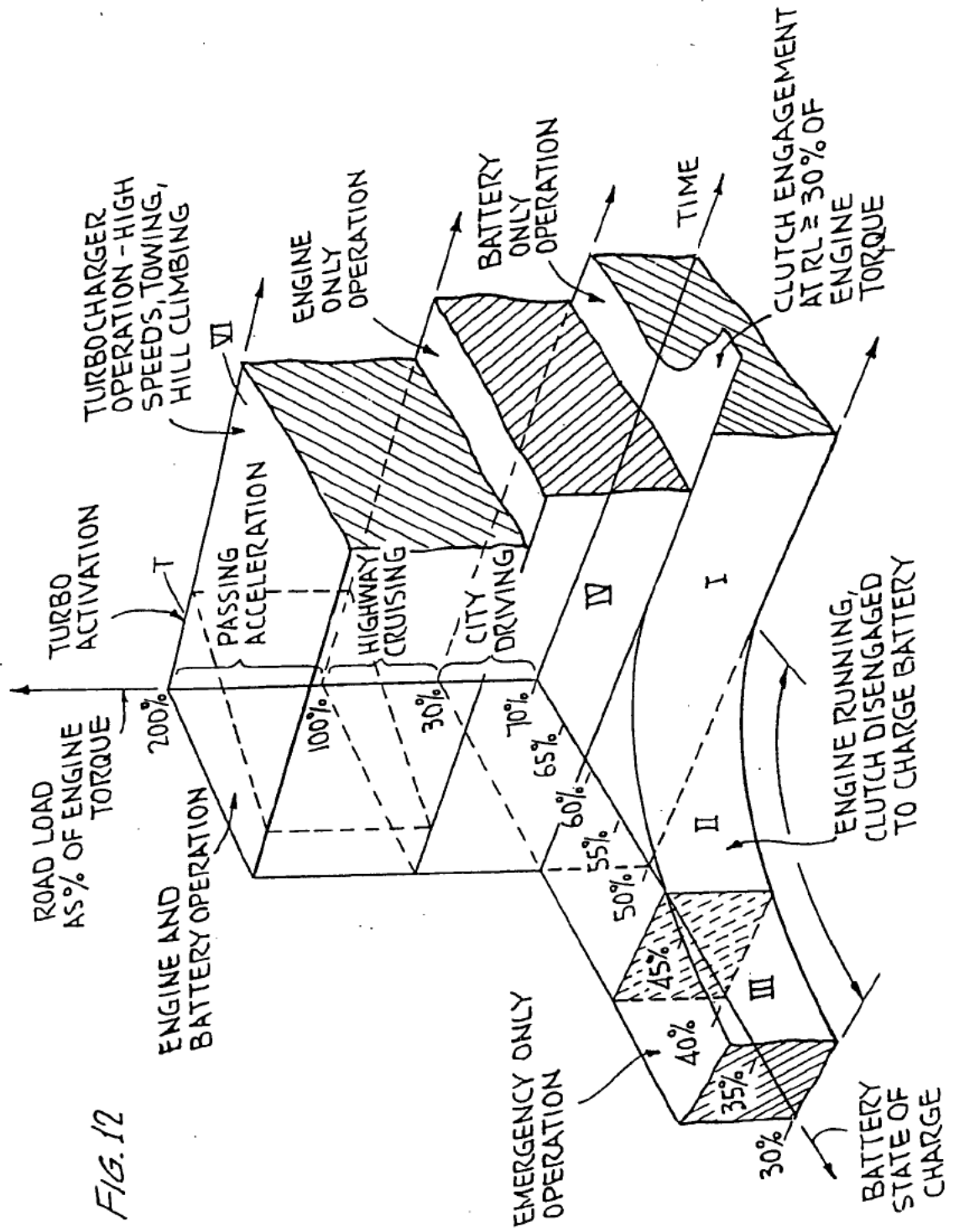


FIG. 12

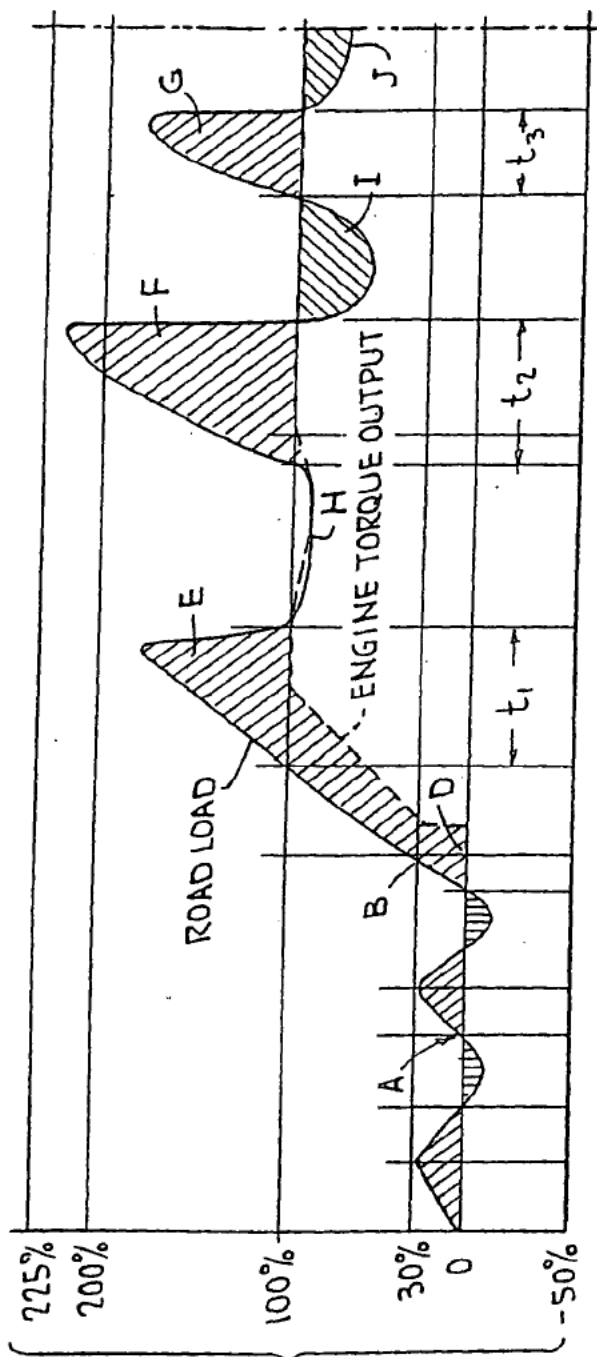


FIG. 13(a)
ROAD LOAD AS %
OF ENGINE'S MAX.
TORQUE (NORMALLY
ASPIRATED)

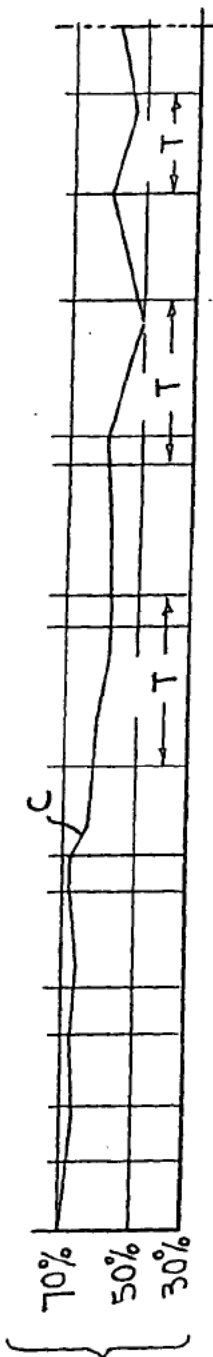


FIG. 13(b)
BATTERY STATE
OF CHARGE

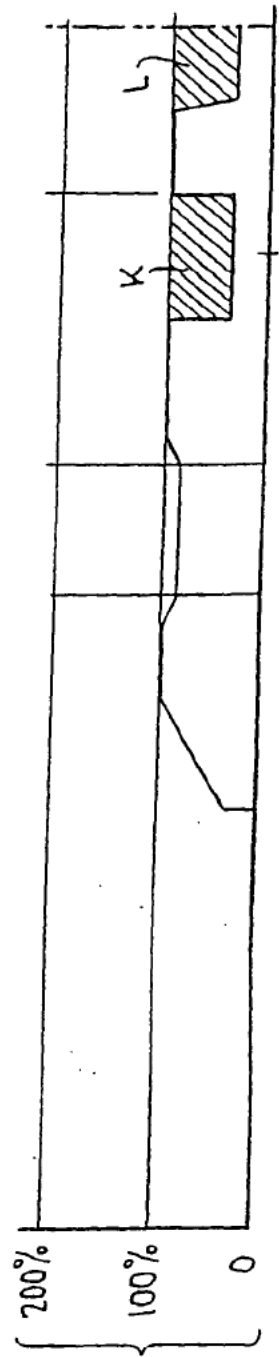


FIG. 13(c)
ENGINE + TURBO-
CHARGER OPERATION

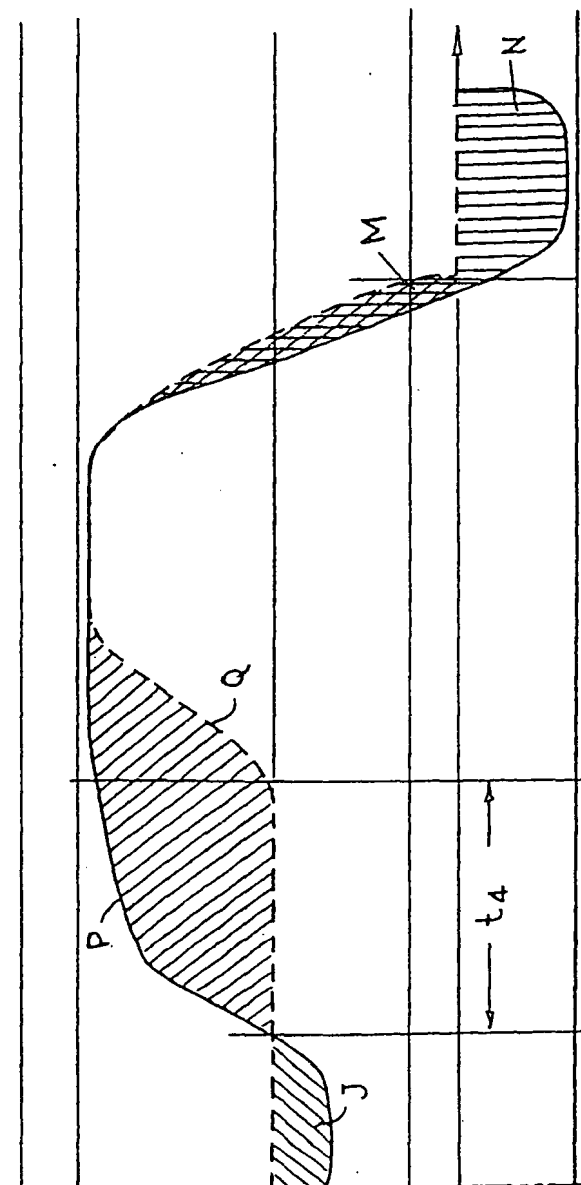


FIG. 13(a)
(CONTINUED)

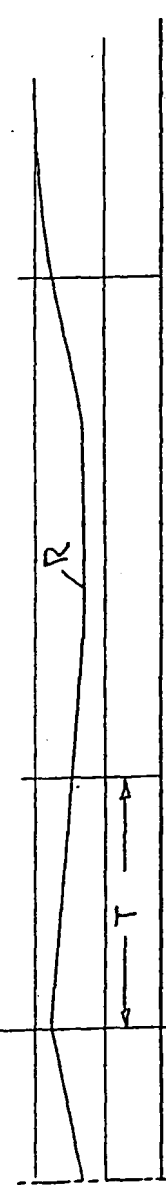


FIG. 13(b)
(CONTINUED)

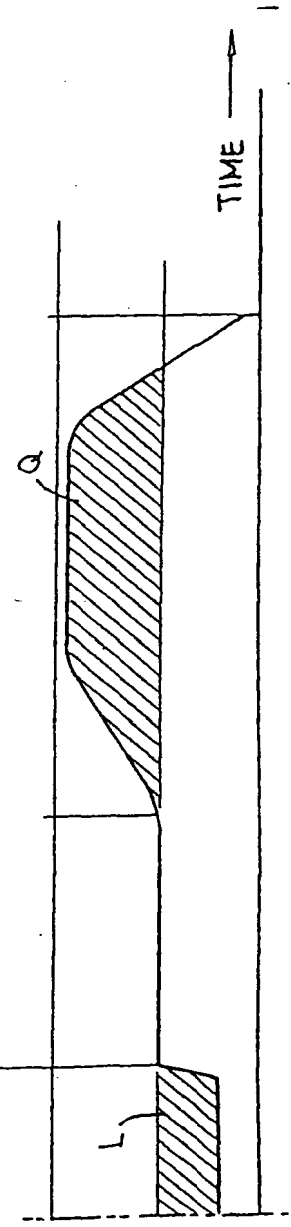


FIG. 13(c)
(CONTINUED)

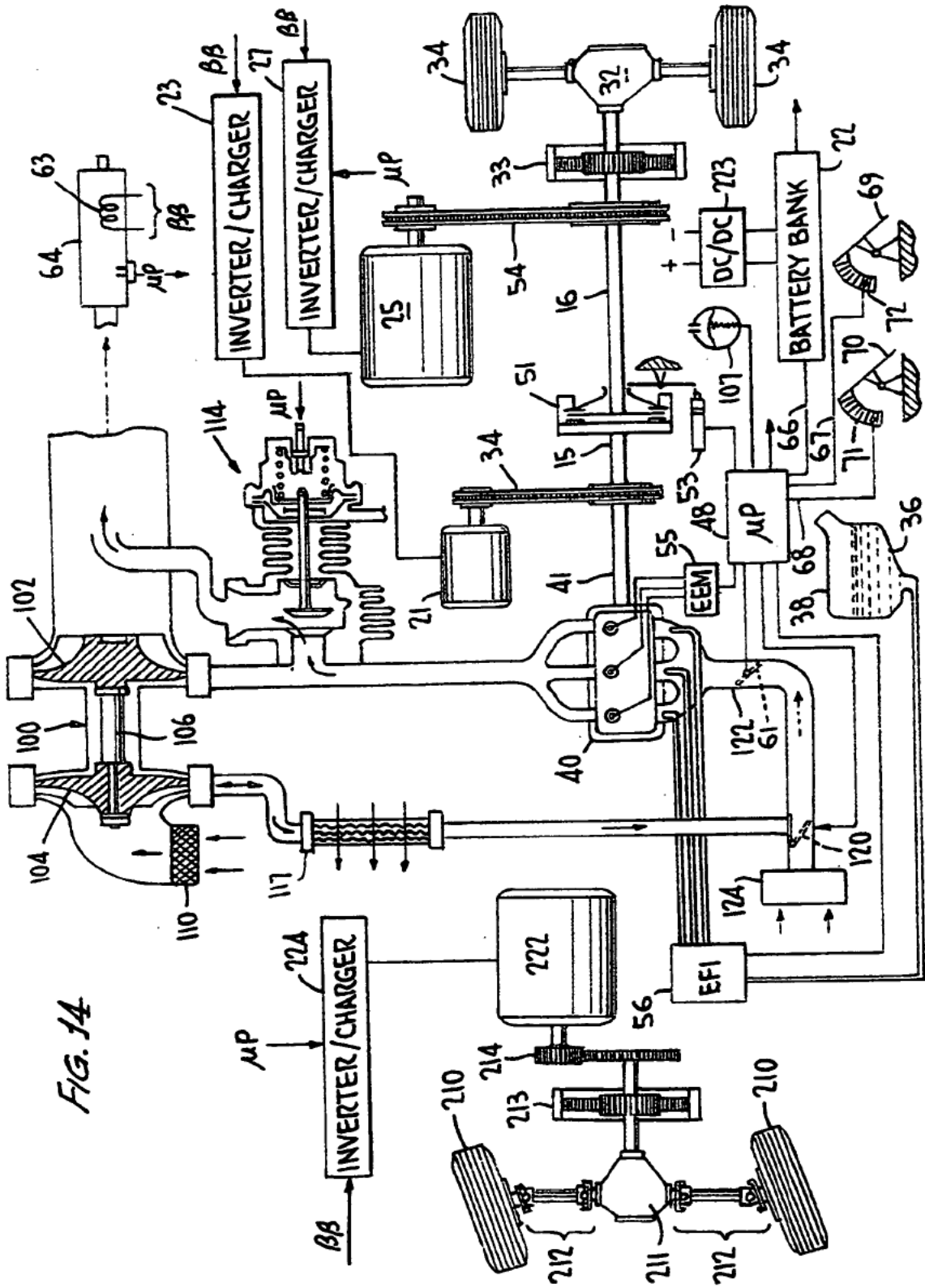


FIG. 14

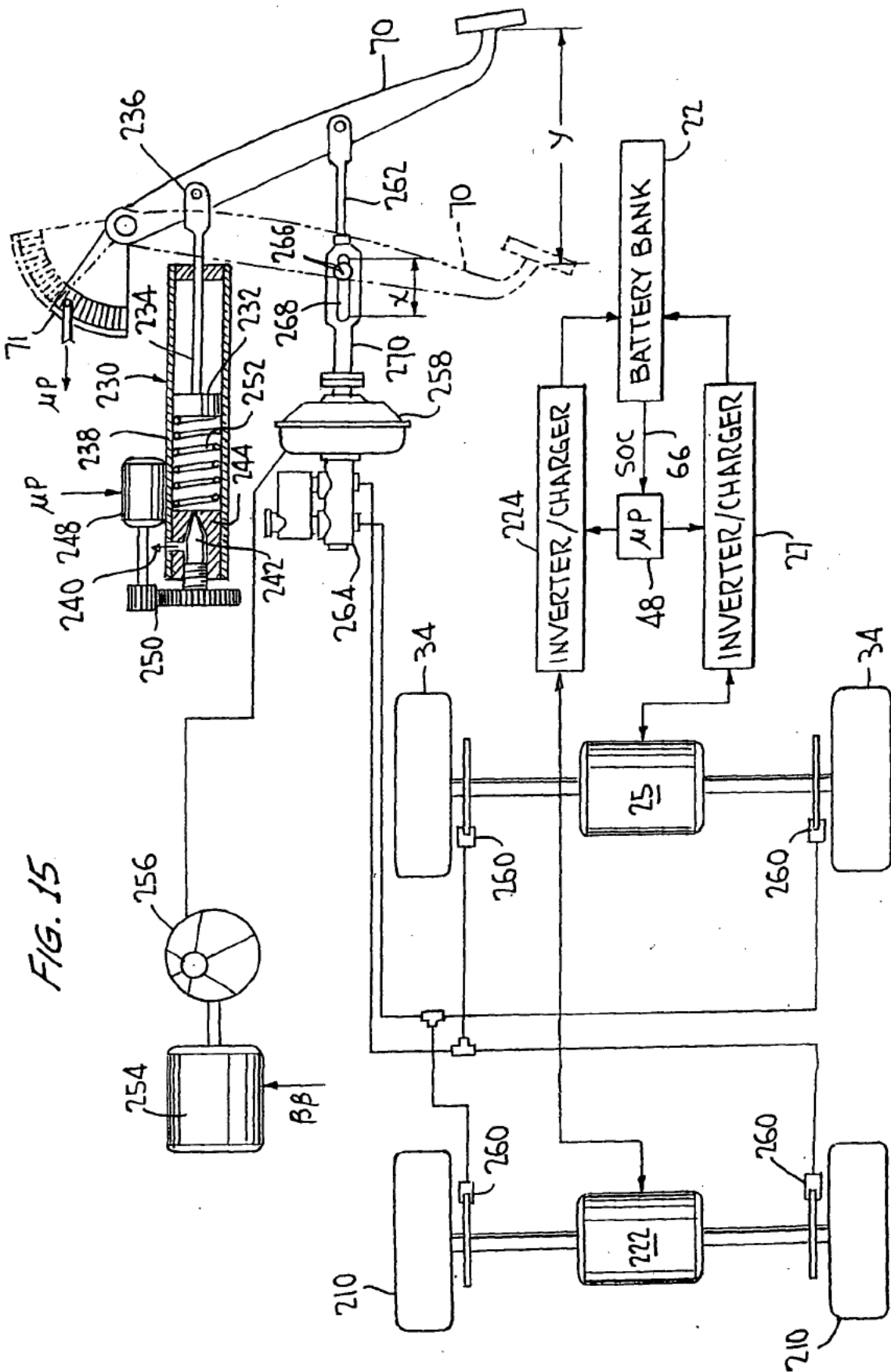
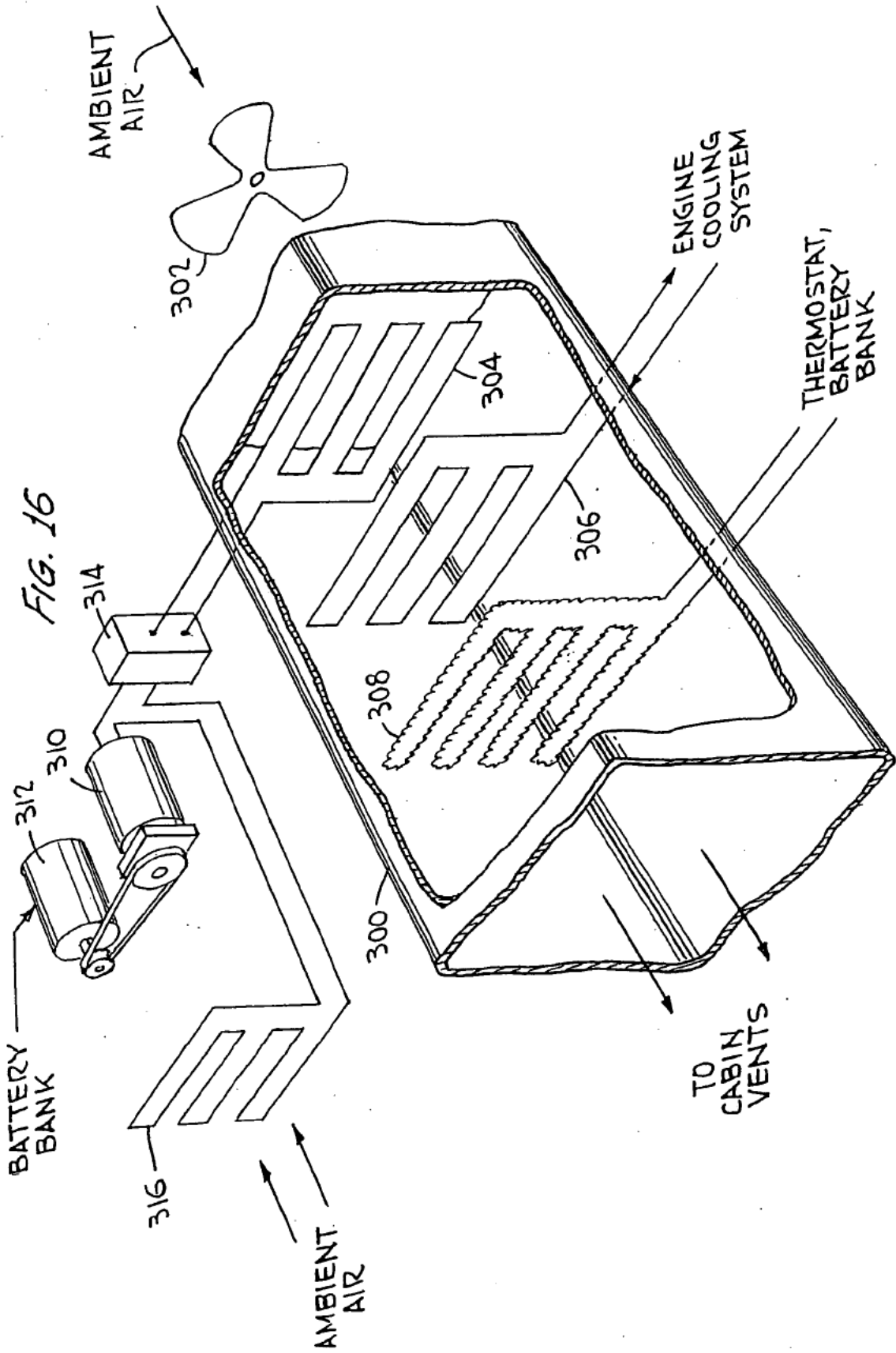


FIG. 15



DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

Hybrid Vehicles,

the specification of which

is attached hereto

X was filed on April 2, 2001 now assigned Application Serial No. 09/822,866 and was amended on _____ (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified application, including the specification and claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, § 119, of the international application for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed: NONE

Prior International Application(s)

Priority Claimed

(Number)

(Country)

(Day/Month/Yr. Filed)

Yes

No

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, § 120 of any United States application listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, § 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

09/264,817

3/9/99

Issued (6,209,672)

60/100,095

9/14/98

Converted

09/392,743

9/9/99

Pending

60/122,296

3/1/99

Converted

(Application SN)

(Filing Date)

Status (patented, pending abandoned, converted)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith:

Michael de Angeli, Reg. No. 27,869

Send correspondence to: Michael de Angeli
1901 Research Blvd.
Suite 330
Rockville, MD 20850

Direct Telephone Calls to: (301) 217-9585

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under § 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Full name of sole or first joint inventor: Alex J. Severinsky

Inventor's Signature Alex J. Severinsky Date 5/18/2001

Residence: Washington, DC Citizenship: US

Post Office Address: 4707 Foxhall Crescent, Washington, DC 20007

Full name of second joint inventor, if any: Theodore Louckes

Inventor's Signature Theodore Louckes Date 5/25/2001

Residence: Holly, MI Citizenship: US

Post Office Address: 10398 Appomatox, Holly, MI, 48442

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO. _____

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

03/30/2011 SDENB083 00000011 13065704

01 FC:1011	330.00 OP
02 FC:1111	540.00 OP
03 FC:1311	220.00 OP
04 FC:1001	540.00 OP

PTO-1556
(5/87)

*U.S. Government Printing Office: 2002- 489-267/69033

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO. _____

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

Adjustment date: 04/25/2011 UEDUVIJE
03/30/2011 SDENB0B3 00000011 13065704
04 FC:1081 -540.00 DP

04/25/2011 UEDUVIJE 00000015 13065704
01 FC:1081 270.00 DP

Refund Ref: 0030096910
04/25/2011

Credit Card Refund Total: \$270.00

VISA.....: XXXXXXXXXXXXX8712

03/30/2011 SDENB0B3 00000011 13065704

01 FC:1011	330.00 DP
02 FC:1111	540.00 DP
03 FC:1311	220.00 DP
04 FC:1081	540.00 DP

PTO-1556
(5/87)

*U.S. Government Printing Office: 2002- 489-267/69033

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Substitute for Form PTO-875

Application or Docket Number
13/065,704

APPLICATION AS FILED - PART I

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(j))	1	minus 20 = *
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	1	minus 3 = *
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$270 (\$135 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).	
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))		

SMALL ENTITY	
RATE(\$)	FEE(\$)
N/A	
N/A	
N/A	
TOTAL	

OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
RATE(\$)	FEE(\$)
N/A	330
N/A	540
N/A	220
x 52 =	0.00
x 220 =	0.00
	270
	0.00
TOTAL	1360

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

APPLICATION AS AMENDED - PART II

AMENDMENT A	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)
	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA
Total (37 CFR 1.16(j))	*	Minus **	=
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus ***	=
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))			
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))			

SMALL ENTITY	
RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
x =	
x =	
TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
x =	
x =	
TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

AMENDMENT B	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)
	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA
Total (37 CFR 1.16(j))	*	Minus **	=
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus ***	=
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))			
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))			

SMALL ENTITY	
RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
x =	
x =	
TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
x =	
x =	
TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
 *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest found in the appropriate box in column 1.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 7 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING or 371(c) DATE, GRP ART UNIT, FIL FEE REC'D, ATTY DOCKET NO, TOT CLAIMS, IND CLAIMS. Row 1: 13/065,704, 03/29/2011, 3667, 1360, PAICE201.DIV.10, 1, 1

CONFIRMATION NO. 6039

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

FILING RECEIPT



Date Mailed: 04/27/2011

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections

Applicant(s)

Alex J. Severinsky, Washington, DC;
Theodore Louckes, Holly, MI, Deceased;

Assignment For Published Patent Application

PAICE LLC

Power of Attorney:

Michael De Angeli--27869

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a DIV of 12/320,600 01/29/2009
which is a DIV of 11/459,458 07/24/2006 ABN
which is a DIV of 10/382,577 03/07/2003 PAT 7,104,347
which is a DIV of 09/822,866 04/02/2001 PAT 6,554,088
which is a CIP of 09/264,817 03/09/1999 PAT 6,209,672
which claims benefit of 60/100,095 09/14/1998
and said 10/382,577 03/07/2003
is a CIP of 09/392,743 09/09/1999 PAT 6,338,391
which claims benefit of 60/122,296 03/01/1999

Foreign Applications (You may be eligible to benefit from the Patent Prosecution Highway program at the USPTO. Please see http://www.uspto.gov for more information.)

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 04/25/2011

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is US 13/065,704

Projected Publication Date: 08/04/2011

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

Hybrid vehicles

Preliminary Class

701

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4158).

**LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER
Title 35, United States Code, Section 184
Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15**

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).



EPW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

re the Patent Application of :
: Severinsky et al : Examiner: N/A
: Serial No.: 13/065,704 : Group Art Unit: 3667
: Filed: March 29, 2011 : Dkt.: PAICE201.DIV.10
: For: **HYBRID VEHICLES**

REQUEST FOR CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Sir:

A corrected filing receipt is requested for this application. The filing receipt received shows one of the parent applications as abandoned; in fact it has issued as patent 7,520,353. A copy of the filing receipt as corrected is attached.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: 5/1/11


Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 6 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING or 371(c) DATE, GRP ART UNIT, FIL FEE REC'D, ATTY. DOCKET NO, TOT CLAIMS, IND CLAIMS. Row 1: 13/065,704, 03/29/2011, 3667, 1360, PAICE201.DIV.10, 1, 1

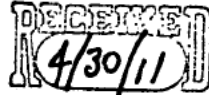
CONFIRMATION NO. 6039

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

FILING RECEIPT



Date Mailed: 04/27/2011



Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections

Applicant(s)

Alex J. Severinsky, Washington, DC;
Theodore Louckes, Holly, MI, Deceased;

Assignment For Published Patent Application

PAICE LLC

Power of Attorney:

Michael De Angeli--27869

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a DIV of 12/320,600 01/29/2009
which is a DIV of 11/459,458 07/24/2006 ABN PAT 7,520,353
which is a DIV of 10/382,577 03/07/2003 PAT 7,104,347
which is a DIV of 09/822,866 04/02/2001 PAT 6,554,088
which is a CIP of 09/264,817 03/09/1999 PAT 6,209,672
which claims benefit of 60/100,095 09/14/1998
and said 10/382,577 03/07/2003
is a CIP of 09/392,743 09/09/1999 PAT 6,338,391
which claims benefit of 60/122,296 03/01/1999

Foreign Applications (You may be eligible to benefit from the Patent Prosecution Highway program at the USPTO. Please see http://www.uspto.gov for more information.)

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 04/25/2011

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is US 13/065,704

Projected Publication Date: 08/04/2011

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

Hybrid vehicles

Preliminary Class

701

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4158).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).



The stamp of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office hereon will acknowledge the date of receipt of the following:

Request for corrected filing receipt

Applicant: Severinsky et al

Ser. No.: 13/065,704

Filed: March 29, 2011

For: **HYBRID VEHICLES**

Docket No.: PAICE201.DIV.10

Please date-stamp and return



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
13/065,704	03/29/2011	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV.10	6039

7590 06/28/2011
 Michael de Angeli
 60 Intrepid Lane
 Jamestown, RI 02835

EXAMINER

SHAFL MUHAMMAD

ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
3667	

3667

MAIL DATE	DELIVERY MODE
06/28/2011	PAPER

06/28/2011

PAPER

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Office Action Summary	Application No. 13/065,704	Applicant(s) SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 1 MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

- 1) Responsive to communication(s) filed on 29 March 2011.
- 2a) This action is **FINAL**.
- 2b) This action is non-final.
- 3) Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

- 4) Claim(s) 1-16 is/are pending in the application.
 - 4a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.
- 5) Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.
- 6) Claim(s) _____ is/are rejected.
- 7) Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.
- 8) Claim(s) 1-16 are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

Application Papers

- 9) The specification is objected to by the Examiner.
- 10) The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are: a) accepted or b) objected to by the Examiner.
 Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).
 Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).
- 11) The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

- 12) Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
 - a) All b) Some * c) None of:
 - 1. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
 - 2. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
 - 3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) | 4) <input type="checkbox"/> Interview Summary (PTO-413)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date. _____ |
| 2) <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) | 5) <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Informal Patent Application |
| 3) <input type="checkbox"/> Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____ | 6) <input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____ |

DETAILED ACTION

Election/Restrictions

1. Restriction to one of the following inventions is required under 35 U.S.C. 121:
 - I. Claims 1-9 are drawn to a method of controlling an internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle, classified in class 180, subclass 65.21.
 - II. Claims 10-13 are drawn to a brake system for a hybrid vehicle, classified in class 180, subclass 370.
 - III. Claims 14-15 are drawn to an HVAC system of a hybrid vehicle, classified in class 237, subclass 2B.
 - IV. Claim 16 is drawn to a method for controlling the relative size of the internal combustion engine, classified in class 123, subclass 52.1.

The inventions are distinct, each from the other because of the following reasons.

2. Invention I/IV and II/III are related as process and apparatus. The inventions are distinct if it can be shown that either: (1) the process as claimed can be practiced by another and materially different apparatus or by hand, or (2) the apparatus as claimed can be used to practice another and materially different process. (MPEP § 806.05(e)). In this case, the process as claimed (i.e. invention I/IV) can be practiced by another and materially different apparatus such as it can be utilized by an engine ECU for controlling the I.C. engine of a hybrid vehicle.

3. Inventions II and III are related as subcombinations disclosed as usable together in a single combination. The subcombinations are distinct if they do not overlap in scope and are not obvious variants, and if it is shown that at least one subcombination is separately usable. In the instant case, subcombination II has separate utility such as controlling resistance to motion of brake pedal in brake system. See MPEP § 806.05(d).

4. Inventions I and IV are related as subcombinations disclosed as usable together in a single combination. The subcombinations are distinct if they do not overlap in scope and are not obvious variants, and if it is shown that at least one subcombination is separately usable. In the instant case, subcombination IV has separate utility such as controlling the size of internal combustion engine by sizing starting/charging motor, sizing traction motor and battery bank. See MPEP § 806.05(d).

5. Further, upon election of **invention I, II, III or IV**, the applicant is further required to elect one of the disclosed species:

- A1. Embodiment of Fig. 3.
- A2. Embodiment of Fig. 4.
- A3. Embodiment of Fig. 11.
- A4. Embodiment of Fig. 14.

The species are independent or distinct because claims to the different species recite the mutually exclusive characteristics of such species. In addition, these species are not obvious variants of each other based on the current record.

6. Applicant is required under 35 U.S.C. 121 to elect a single disclosed species for prosecution on the merits to which the claims shall be restricted if no generic claim is finally held to be allowable.

7. Restriction for examination purposes as indicated is proper because all these inventions listed in this action are independent or distinct for the reasons given above and there would be a serious search and examination burden if restriction were not required because one or more of the following reasons apply:

- (a) the inventions have acquired a separate status in the art in view of their different classification;
- (b) the inventions have acquired a separate status in the art due to their recognized divergent subject matter;
- (c) the inventions require a different field of search (for example, searching different classes/subclasses or electronic resources, or employing different search queries);
- (d) the prior art applicable to one invention would not likely be applicable to another invention;
- (e) the inventions are likely to raise different non-prior art issues under 35 U.S.C. 101 and/or 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph.

Applicant is advised that the reply to this requirement to be complete must include (i) an election of a invention to be examined even though the requirement

Art Unit: 3667

may be traversed (37 CFR 1.143) **and (ii) identification of the claims encompassing the elected invention.**

The election of an invention may be made with or without traverse. To reserve a right to petition, the election must be made with traverse. If the reply does not distinctly and specifically point out supposed errors in the restriction requirement, the election shall be treated as an election without traverse. Traversal must be presented at the time of election in order to be considered timely. Failure to timely traverse the requirement will result in the loss of right to petition under 37 CFR 1.144. If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which of these claims are readable on the elected invention.

If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which of these claims are readable upon the elected invention.

Should applicant traverse on the ground that the inventions are not patentably distinct, applicant should submit evidence or identify such evidence now of record showing the inventions to be obvious variants or clearly admit on the record that this is the case. In either instance, if the examiner finds one of the inventions unpatentable over the prior art, the evidence or admission may be used in a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) of the other invention.

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to MUHAMMAD SHAFI whose telephone number is (571)270-5741. The examiner can normally be reached on M-F 8:30 AM -5:00 PM.


Art Unit: 3667

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, James Trammell can be reached on (571)-272-6712. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/ms/
Examiner
Art Unit 3667

/James P Trammell/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3667

<i>Index of Claims</i> 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

✓	Rejected
=	Allowed

-	Cancelled
÷	Restricted

N	Non-Elected
I	Interference

A	Appeal
O	Objected

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
 CPA
 T.D.
 R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE							
Final	Original	06/27/2011							
	1	÷							
	2	÷							
	3	÷							
	4	÷							
	5	÷							
	6	÷							
	7	÷							
	8	÷							
	9	÷							
	10	÷							
	11	÷							
	12	÷							
	13	÷							
	14	÷							
	15	÷							
	16	÷							



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 4 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER (13/065,704), FILING OR 371(C) DATE (03/29/2011), FIRST NAMED APPLICANT (Alex J. Severinsky), ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE (PAICE201.DIV.10)

CONFIRMATION NO. 6039

PUBLICATION NOTICE

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835



Title:Hybrid vehicles

Publication No.US-2011-0190971-A1
Publication Date:08/04/2011

NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publically available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently http://www.uspto.gov/patft/.

The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Office of Public Records. The Office of Public Records can be reached by telephone at (703) 308-9726 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (703) 305-8759, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Office of Public Records, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently http://pair.uspto.gov/. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197.

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al :
Serial No.: 13/065,704 :
Filed: March 29, 2011 :
For: Hybrid Vehicles :

: Examiner: Shafi
:
: Group Art Unit: 3667
:
: Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.10
:

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

AMENDMENT

Sir:

In response to the Office Action mailed June 28, 2011 setting a shortened statutory period for response extended by a paper filed herewith with fee to expire September 28, 2011, kindly amend the above-identified application as follows:

10/03/2011 HVUONG1 00000004 040401 13065704
01 FC:1202 1500.00 OP
02 FC:1201 250.00 OP

IN THE CLAIMS

1 - 16 (Cancelled)

17. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a battery, a controller, wheels, an internal combustion engine and at least one electric motor, wherein both the internal combustion engine and motor are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle, said method comprising the steps of:

operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to provide torque to operate the vehicle;

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

employing said controller to control the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value.

18. (New) The method of claim 17, wherein said step of controlling the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.

19. (New) The method of claim 18, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.

20. (New) The method of claim 17, wherein when said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

21. (New) The method of claim 17, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

22. (New) The method of claim 17, wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to the engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

23. (New) The method of claim 17, comprising the further steps of:

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the torque required to operate the vehicle is greater than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO), and

operating said electric motor as a generator to accept torque from said engine to charge said battery when the torque required to operate the vehicle is less than ITO.

24. (New) The method of claim 17, comprising the further steps of:

operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; and

operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP.

25. (New) The method of claim 24, further comprising the step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

26. (New) The method of claim 17, further comprising the step of:

operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, wherein torque produced by the engine equal to the torque required to propel the vehicle (RL) is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery.

27. (New) The method of claim 17, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a voltage of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

28. (New) The method of claim 17, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

29. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a battery, a controller, wheels, an internal combustion engine and at least one electric motor, wherein both the internal combustion engine and motor are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle, said method comprising the steps of:

operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to provide torque to operate the vehicle;

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque being provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

employing said controller to control the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value, and such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.

30. (New) The method of claim 29, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.

31. (New) The method of claim 29, wherein when said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

32. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 29, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

33. (New) The method of claim 29, wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to the engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

34. (New) The method of claim 29, comprising the further step of:

operating said electric motor as a generator to accept excess torque from said engine to charge said battery when the torque required to operate the vehicle is less than the engine's ITO.

35. (New) The method of claim 29, comprising the further steps of:

operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; and

operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP.

36. (New) The method of claim 35, further comprising the step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

37. (New) The method of claim 35, further comprising the step of:

operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, wherein torque produced by the engine equal to the torque required to propel the vehicle (RL) is used to propel the hybrid

vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery.

38. (New) The method of claim 29, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a voltage of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

39. (New) The method of claim 29, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a current of no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

40. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising the steps of:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is between SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is more than MTO; and

controlling the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited, and, if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

41. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein said step of controlling the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.

42. (New) The method of claim 41, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.

43. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein when said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated, prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

44. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

45. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to MTO.

46. (New) The method of claim 40, comprising the further steps of:

operating said electric motor as a generator powered by said engine to charge said battery when RL is less than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO); and

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when RL is greater than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO).

47. (New) The method of claim 40, further comprising the step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

48. (New) The method of claim 40, further comprising the step of:

operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, and wherein torque produced by the engine equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery.

49. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a voltage of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

50. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a current of no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

51. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

- an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

at least one electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the at least one electric motor, operable to provide electrical power to the at least one electric motor; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the at least one electric motor, and the one or more wheels, responsive to an operator command;

wherein said controller controls said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque being provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

wherein said controller controls said engine such that a rate of change of torque output by said engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value.

52. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the controller is operable to limit a rate of change of torque produced by the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.
53. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 52, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio.
54. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein when said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated, prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.
55. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.
56. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the controller stops the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle, to charge the battery, or both, is less than SP.
57. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the battery is operable to be charged when the instantaneous torque output of the internal combustion engine is greater than the amount of torque required to propel the vehicle, when the amount of torque required to propel the vehicle is negative, or when braking is initiated by the operator.
58. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the maximum torque available for supply to the one or more wheels from the at least one electric motor is at least equal to the maximum torque available for supply to the one or more wheels from the engine.
59. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the controller is operable to start and operate the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.
60. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein energy is supplied from the battery to the motor at a peak of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.
61. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein energy is supplied from the battery to the motor at no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

REMARKS

Claim 16 previously pending in this application (claims 1 - 15 having been canceled in the original cover letter filed August 9, 2010) has been cancelled in favor of new claims 17 - 61. Entry is respectfully requested.

The Office Action of June 28, 2011 was a restriction requirement, which has been obviated by the submission of new claims. All of claims 17 - 61 include the limitation that the rate of change of torque of the engine of the hybrid vehicle of the claims is limited, and it is respectfully submitted that all of these claims are accordingly appropriate for examination in a single application. The advantage of thus limiting the rate of change of torque output by the engine is that the engine can be controlled to combust fuel at the stoichiometric fuel:air ratio, while any shortfall in torque required to propel the vehicle can be provided by an electric motor of the hybrid vehicle. This is recited explicitly in some of the independent claims (see claim 29), and is found in dependent claims of some of the other claim sets (see claim 52, for example). This aspect of the invention is discussed at pages 70- 71 of the application as filed. Early and favorable action on the merits is earnestly solicited.

Dated: 9/27/11

Respectfully submitted,



Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190



THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: Shafi
Serial No.: 13/065,704	:	Group Art Unit: 3667
Filed: March 29, 2011	:	Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.10
For: Hybrid Vehicles	:	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria VA 22313-1450

TRANSMITTAL OF AMENDMENT

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above - identified application.

x A credit card charge form for the additional claim fee of \$1520 as calculated below (also paying the \$490 fee for a two-month extension of time) is enclosed for this amendment.

 The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the fee for additional claims, as calculated below, or any underpayment (or to credit overpayment) to our Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is attached.

TOTAL CLAIMS		CLAIMS PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	LARGE ENTITY ADDITIONAL RATE	
TOTAL	45	20	=	25	Extra x 52 = \$1300.00
INDEP.	4	3	=	1	Extra x 220 = \$ 220.00
TOTAL:					\$1520.00

Respectfully submitted,



Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

Dated:


9/22/11

**** CERTIFICATE OF MAILING ****

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being mailed with adequate postage on the date below via the US Postal Service, and addressed to Hon. Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Arlington VA 22313-1450.

Michael de Angeli

Name of Registered Representative



9/27/11

Signature

Date



IFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al

: Examiner: Shafi

Serial No.: 13/065,704

: Group Art Unit: 3667

Filed: March 29, 2011

: Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.10

For: Hybrid Vehicles

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

PETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME

Dear Sir:

The above-named applicant hereby requests a two-month extension of time to respond to the Office Action mailed in this application on June 28, 2011.

The petition fee of \$490 is being paid by way of a credit card charge from also paying the fee for additional claims.

Respectfully submitted,

9/27/11
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

10/03/2011 HVUONG1 00000004 040401 13065704
03 FC:1252 300.00 DA 260.00 OP

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 13/065,704	Filing Date 03/29/2011	<input type="checkbox"/> To be Mailed
---	---	----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I			OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY				
FOR	NUMBER FILED (Column 1)	NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2)	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)
<input type="checkbox"/> BASIC FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
<input type="checkbox"/> SEARCH FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
<input type="checkbox"/> EXAMINATION FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
TOTAL CLAIMS <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	minus 20 =	*	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	minus 3 =	*	X \$ =			X \$ =	
<input type="checkbox"/> APPLICATION SIZE FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$250 (\$125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).						
<input type="checkbox"/> MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>							
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.			TOTAL			TOTAL	

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II					OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY				
	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY		SMALL ENTITY		
AMENDMENT	09/30/2011	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	* 45	Minus	** 20	= 25	X \$ =	OR	X \$60=	1500
	Independent <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	* 4	Minus	***3	= 1	X \$ =	OR	X \$250=	250
	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>								
<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>							OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	1750

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY		SMALL ENTITY		
AMENDMENT		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	*	Minus	**	=	X \$ =	OR	X \$ =	
	Independent <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	*	Minus	***	=	X \$ =	OR	X \$ =	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>								
<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>							OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
 *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

Legal Instrument Examiner:
/TERRY MALLOY/

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**
 If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.



111

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Severinsky et al : Examiner: Shafi
 Serial No.: 13/065,704 : Group Art Unit: 3667
 Filed: March 29, 2011 : Atty. Dkt.: PAICE201.DIV10
 For: Hybrid Vehicles

CHANGE OF CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
 P. O. Box 1450
 Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Effective November 15, 2011, kindly change the address for
 correspondence concerning this matter to the following

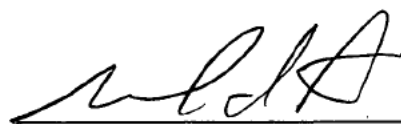
Michael de Angeli
 34 Court Street
 Jamestown RI 02835

Tel: 401-423-3190
 Fax: 401-423-3191
 Email: Mdeangeli20@gmail.com

Thank you for your attention to this matter.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: 11/15/11


 Michael de Angeli
 Reg. No. 27,869
 60 Intrepid Lane
 Jamestown RI 02835
 401-423-3190

PLUS Search Results for S/N 13065704, Searched Wed Nov 23 08:48:43 EST 2011

The Patent Linguistics Utility System (PLUS) is a USPTO automated search system for U.S. Patents from 1971 to the present PLUS is a query-by-example search system which produces a list of patents that are most closely related linguistically to the application searched. This search was prepared by the staff of the Scientific and Technical Information Center, SIRA.

4793599 99	6188943 97
6002979 98	
4967610 98	
6079258 98	
6086510 98	
6134488 98	
4266628 97	
4298151 97	
4402237 97	
4414946 97	
4531489 97	
4532901 97	
4618041 97	
4625825 97	
4775939 97	
4815263 97	
4846451 97	
4869474 97	
4911211 97	
4945977 97	
4989149 97	
5242273 97	
5279384 97	
5406483 97	
5526261 97	
5528086 97	
5539377 97	
5562085 97	
5634339 97	
5660149 97	
5663880 97	
5665026 97	
5686773 97	
5689142 97	
5838251 97	
5848381 97	
5845612 97	
5858942 97	
5873250 97	
5874785 97	
5896554 97	
5905432 97	
5957663 97	
5970925 97	
5976055 97	
6006146 97	
6026921 97	
6065565 97	
6073507 97	

PLUS Search Results for S/N 13065704, Searched Wed Nov 23 10:43:45 EST 2011

The Patent Linguistics Utility System (PLUS) is a USPTO automated search system for U.S. Patents from 1971 to the present PLUS is a query-by-example search system which produces a list of patents that are most closely related linguistically to the application searched. This search was prepared by the staff of the Scientific and Technical Information Center, SIRA.

4793599 99	6188943 97
6002979 98	
4967610 98	
6079258 98	
6086510 98	
6134488 98	
4266628 97	
4298151 97	
4402237 97	
4414946 97	
4531489 97	
4532901 97	
4618041 97	
4625825 97	
4775939 97	
4815263 97	
4846451 97	
4869474 97	
4911211 97	
4945977 97	
4989149 97	
5242273 97	
5279384 97	
5406483 97	
5526261 97	
5528086 97	
5539377 97	
5562085 97	
5634339 97	
5660149 97	
5663880 97	
5665026 97	
5686773 97	
5689142 97	
5838251 97	
5848381 97	
5845612 97	
5858942 97	
5873250 97	
5874785 97	
5896554 97	
5905432 97	
5957663 97	
5970925 97	
5976055 97	
6006146 97	
6026921 97	
6065565 97	
6073507 97	



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO., EXAMINER, ART UNIT, PAPER NUMBER, MAIL DATE, DELIVERY MODE. Includes application details for Alex J. Severinsky and Michael de Angeli.

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Office Action Summary	Application No. 13/065,704	Applicant(s) SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 3 MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

- 1) Responsive to communication(s) filed on 30 September 2011.
- 2a) This action is **FINAL**.
- 2b) This action is non-final.
- 3) An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on _____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.
- 4) Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

- 5) Claim(s) 17-61 is/are pending in the application.
- 5a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.
- 6) Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.
- 7) Claim(s) 17-61 is/are rejected.
- 8) Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.
- 9) Claim(s) _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

Application Papers

- 10) The specification is objected to by the Examiner.
- 11) The drawing(s) filed on 29 March 2011 is/are: a) accepted or b) objected to by the Examiner.
Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).
Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).
- 12) The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

- 13) Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
a) All b) Some * c) None of:
1. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
2. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).
* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

- 1) Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
- 2) Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
- 3) Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____.
- 4) Interview Summary (PTO-413)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____.
- 5) Notice of Informal Patent Application
- 6) Other: _____.

DETAILED ACTION

The communication is a first office action, non-final rejection on the merits. Claims 17-61, as originally filed, are currently pending and have been considered below.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 112

1. The following is a quotation of the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112:

The specification shall conclude with one or more claims particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention.
2. Claims 18-19, 29-39,41-42 and 52-53 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite for failing to particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention.

In these claims, the recitation "a near-stoichiometric ratio" renders the claim indefinite since it is not clear what stoichiometric ratio is meant here, lean ratio or rich ratio. What is the air fuel ratio ? Clarification is required.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

3. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless –

(b) the invention was patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country or in public use or on sale in this country, more than one year prior to the date of application for patent in the United States.
4. Claims 17-18, 23-29, 34-41, 46-52, 56-60 and 61 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as being anticipated by Severinsky (USP 5343970).

As Per Claim 17, Severinsky teaches, a method (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3)

Art Unit: 3667

for controlling a hybrid vehicle (Fig.3), said vehicle comprising a battery (22) , a controller (microcontroller 48), wheels (34), an internal combustion engine (40) and at least one electric motor (20), wherein both the internal combustion engine (40) and motor (20) are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle (Fig. 3), said method comprising the steps of: operating (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) the internal combustion engine (40) of the hybrid vehicle to provide torque (via controllable torque-transfer unit 28) to operate the vehicle (Abstract), also see Abstract, lines 2-4, and via steady state highway cruising , abstract, lines 9-10); operating (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) said at least one electric motor (20) to provide additional torque when the amount of torque provided by said engine (40) is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; (via Abstract : when accelerating or climbing hill (i.e., engine torque is not sufficient to meet road load torque) , both engine and motor providing torque to drive the vehicle, Abstract) and employing said controller (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) to control the engine (40) (via controllable torque-transfer unit 28) such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value (via engine producing substantial torque over a wide RPM operating range, Col. 12, lines 7-13. In Fig.14, O-C being torque range, after that torque decrease with increase in RPM).

As per Claims 18 and 41, 52, Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky further teaches, wherein said step of controlling the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio (operating the

Art Unit: 3667

engine 40 in lean burn mode via supplying air slightly in excess of the amount required for stoichiometric combustion , achieving complete combustion (Col. 12, lines 13-22, , Fig. 11, 4).

As per Claims 23 and 34 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky, further teaches, operating (via 48) said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the torque required to operate the vehicle is greater than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO) (via Abstract : when accelerating or climbing hill (i.e., engine torque is not sufficient to meet road load torque) , both engine and motor providing torque to drive the vehicle, Abstract) and operating said electric motor as a generator to accept torque from said engine to charge said battery when the torque required to operate the vehicle is less than ITO. (Abstract; Col.6, lines 19-49, Col.7, lines 8-26, Figs. 1-2).

As per Claims 24 and 35 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky, further teaches, comprising the further steps of: operating said internal combustion engine (via Microcontroller 48) to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO (via when in steady state highway cruising , Abstract, lines 9-10); operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; (via when accelerating or climbing hill , Abstract, lines 7-8, i.e., engine torque is not sufficient , so motor also

Art Unit: 3667

start producing torque to supplement high torque demand) also see col.6, lines 19-48); and operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP (via Abstract, low speed or in traffic driving; also see, Col.6, lines 19-49, Col.7, lines 8-26, Figs. 1-2).

As per Claims 25 and 36, 47, 56, 59 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky, further teaches step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions (via Abstract, low speed or in traffic driving; also see , Col. 6, lines 19-48)

Examiner interprets “abnormal and transient condition” as in traffic or city drive , too many traffic light so too many stops and reverse operation.

As per Claims 26 and 37, 48 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky, further teaches, further comprising the step of: operating the engine (via microcontroller 48) to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery (22), wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle (at low speed or in traffic driving), to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, wherein torque produced by the engine equal to the torque required to propel the vehicle (RL) is used to propel the hybrid vehicle (via both engine and motor producing torque when accelerating or climbing hill) and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery (via Abstract, Col.6, lines 19-49, Col.7, lines 8-26, Figs. 1-2).

As per Claims 27 and 38, 49 , 60 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky, further teaches wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the

Art Unit: 3667

battery under peak load conditions (via electrical energy flowing from battery to motor as shown by dot-dash line, in Fig. 6, also see Abstract , lines 15-20). Severinsky teaches electrical energy flowing from battery to motor. However Severinsky does not teach energy supplied being at a voltage of at least 500 volts.

It would have been obvious to one having ordinary skill in the art at the time invention was made to achieve this range, since it has been held that where the general conditions of a claim are disclosed in the prior art, discovering the optimum or workable ranges involves only routine skill in the art. *In re Aller*, 105, USPQ 233.

As per Claims 28 and 39, 50 and 61 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky, further teaches, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at lower current under peak load conditions (Abstract, lines 15-20).

However Severinsky does not teach energy supplied being at 75 amperes or less under peak load conditions.

It would have been obvious to one having ordinary skill in the art at the time invention was made to achieve this range, since it has been held that where the general conditions of a claim are disclosed in the prior art, discovering the optimum or workable ranges involves only routine skill in the art. *In re Aller*, 105, USPQ 233.

As Per Claim 29, Severinsky teaches , a method for controlling a hybrid vehicle(via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) said vehicle comprising a battery (22), a controller (via microcontroller 48), wheels (34), an internal combustion engine (40) and at least one electric motor (20), wherein both the internal combustion engine (40) and motor (20) are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle, said method

Art Unit: 3667

comprising the steps of: operating (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) the internal combustion engine (40) of the hybrid vehicle to provide torque to operate(via controllable torque-transfer unit 28) the vehicle(Abstract), also see Abstract, lines 2-4, and via steady state highway cruising , abstract, lines 9-10); operating (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) said at least one electric motor (20) to provide additional torque when the amount of torque being provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle (via Abstract : when accelerating or climbing hill (i.e., engine torque is not sufficient to meet road load torque) , both engine and motor providing torque to drive the vehicle, Abstract); and employing said controller (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) to control the engine (40) (via controllable torque-transfer unit 28) such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value, (via engine producing substantial torque over a wide RPM operating range, Col. 12, lines 7-13. In Fig.14, O-C being torque range, after that torque decrease with increase in RPM) and such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near-stoichiometric ratio (operating the engine 40 in lean burn mode via supplying air slightly in excess of the amount required for stoichiometric combustion , achieving complete combustion (Col. 12, lines 13-22, , Fig. 11, 4).

As Per Claim 40, Severinsky teaches, a method for controlling a hybrid vehicle (via microcontroller 48, Fig. 3) , comprising the steps of: determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle (via microcontroller 48, computing torque based on operator commands(acceleration, deceleration, reverse) and data input from different sensors (Col. 10, lines 4-44); operating at least one electric motor to

Art Unit: 3667

propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is less than a setpoint (SP) (via when in steady state highway cruising , Abstract, lines 9-10); operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is between SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO (via when low speed mode, i.e., in traffic or in city, during reverse operation or the like, less torque required, only motor producing the torque, Col. 6, lines 19-48, col.7, lines 8-26,Figs. 1-2); operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is more than MTO; (via when accelerating or climbing hill , Abstract, lines 7-8, i.e., engine torque is not sufficient , so motor also start producing torque to supplement high torque demand) also see col.6, lines 19-48); and controlling the engine such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited, and, if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

(Abstract, also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, col.7, lines 8-26,Figs. 1-2).

As per Claims 46 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 40. Severinsky, further teaches, the method comprising the further steps of: operating said electric motor as a generator powered by said engine to charge said battery when RL is less than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO); and operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when RL is greater than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO) (Abstract, Col. 6, lines 19-48 , Col. 7, lines 8-26, Figs. 3-4).

As Per Claim 51, Severinsky teaches A hybrid vehicle (via Figs. 3-4), comprising: one or more wheels (34); an internal combustion engine (40) operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;(via in traffic or during reverse operation, Abstract), Also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, Col. 7, lines 8-26, at least one electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;(both engine and motor providing torque when accelerating or hill climbing (Abstract, Also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, Col. 7, lines 8-26) a battery (22) coupled to the at least one electric motor (coupled with motor 20 through AC/DC converter 44), operable to provide electrical power to the at least one electric motor; (Abstract) Figs. 3-4) and a controller (via microcontroller 48, Fig.3-4), operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the at least one electric motor, and the one or more wheels, responsive to an operator command;(via EFI, operator commands, data input Fig.3) wherein said controller (48) controls said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque being provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; (accelerating or hill climb , Abstract, Also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, Col. 7, lines 8-26) and wherein said controller (48) controls said engine such that a rate of change of torque output by said engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value(Abstract, Also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, Col. 7, lines 8-26).

As per Claims 57 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 51. Severinsky, further teaches wherein the battery is operable to be charged when the instantaneous torque output of the internal combustion engine is greater than the amount of torque

Art Unit: 3667

required to propel the vehicle, when the amount of torque required to propel the vehicle is negative, or when braking is initiated by the operator (Abstract, Also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, Col. 7, lines 8-26).

As per Claim 58, Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 51. Severinsky, further teaches , wherein the maximum torque available for supply to the one or more wheels from the at least one electric motor is at least equal to the maximum torque available for supply to the one or more wheels from the engine (See Abstract : when accelerating or climbing hill (i.e., engine torque is not sufficient to meet road load torque) , both engine and motor providing torque to drive the vehicle, Abstract); Also see Col. 6, lines 19-48, Col. 7, lines 8-26).

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

5. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negated by the manner in which the invention was made.

6. The factual inquiries set forth in *Graham v. John Deere Co.*, 383 U.S. 1, 148 USPQ 459 (1966), that are applied for establishing a background for determining obviousness under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) are summarized as follows:

1. Determining the scope and contents of the prior art.
2. Ascertaining the differences between the prior art and the claims at issue.
3. Resolving the level of ordinary skill in the pertinent art.
4. Considering objective evidence present in the application indicating obviousness or nonobviousness.

Art Unit: 3667

7. This application currently names joint inventors. In considering patentability of the claims under 35 U.S.C. 103(a), the examiner presumes that the subject matter of the various claims was commonly owned at the time any inventions covered therein were made absent any evidence to the contrary. Applicant is advised of the obligation under 37 CFR 1.56 to point out the inventor and invention dates of each claim that was not commonly owned at the time a later invention was made in order for the examiner to consider the applicability of 35 U.S.C. 103(c) and potential 35 U.S.C. 102(e), (f) or (g) prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103(a).

8. Claims 19, 21, 30, 32, 42, 44, 53 and 55 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Severinsky (USP 5343970) in view of Kamura et al. (USP 5483939).

As per Claim 19, 30 , 42, 53 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 18. Severinsky further teaches, monitoring the engine to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a near- stoichiometric ratio (operating the engine 40 in lean burn mode via supplying air slightly in excess of the amount required for stoichiometric combustion (Col. 12, lines 13-2). However, Severinsky does not explicitly teach monitoring the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine to achieve combustion in near-stoichiometric fuel air ratio.

However, in the same field of endeavor , Kamura et al. (Kamura) teaches a control system for lean-burn internal combustion engine (Col.1, lines 6-13), monitoring (via ECU 25, FIG. 2) the amount of oxygen (via oxygen sensor 22) in an exhaust stream (4) from said engine to achieve combustion in near-stoichiometric fuel air ratio (

Art Unit: 3667

via oxygen sensor 22 being placed in exhaust passage 4 (Fig.2) for linearly detecting concentration of oxygen, Col.5, lines 54-59, Fig.2, also see Col.3, line 64- Col.. 4, line 10.

Both Severinsky and Kamura are directed toward hybrid vehicle operation control. Severinsky teaches Hybrid vehicle cruising in different speed, improved fuel efficiency and reduced pollutant emissions. However, Severinsky does not teach a monitoring amount of oxygen in exhaust stream. However, Kamura teaches monitoring amount of oxygen in exhaust stream.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have included the Internal combustion engine lean-burn control teachings (ECU 25 and sensors) of Kamura with the system of Severinsky and configure it with the system of Severinsky to have ECU getting signals from different sensors and controlling air/fuel ratio (rich or lean) based torque demand. Kamura provides the motivation to combine the two teachings to perform a lean-burn operation at an air/fuel ratio leaner than a stoichiometric air/fuel ratio under predetermined operation conditions.

As per Claim 21 and 32, 44, 55 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky also teaches stoichiometric combustion Col. 12, lines 13-17. However, Severinsky does not explicitly teach wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel: air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

However, in the same field of endeavor , Kamura teaches a control system wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel: air ratio of no more than 1.2 of

Art Unit: 3667

the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine (via control system for a lean-burn internal combustion engine which performs a lean-burn operation at an air/fuel ratio leaner than a stoichiometric air/fuel ratio under predetermined operation conditions(Col .1, lines 15-20) via ECU 25, Figs. 2-3).

Both Severinsky and Kamura are directed toward hybrid vehicle control. Severinsky teaches Hybrid vehicle cruising in different speed, improved fuel efficiency and reduced pollutant emissions. However, Severinsky does not teach monitoring stoichiometric air/fuel ratio. However, Kamura teaches monitoring stoichiometric air/fuel ratio by ECU 25.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have included the IC lean-burn control teachings (ECU 25 and sensors) of Kamura with the system of Severinsky and configure it with the system of Severinsky to have ECU getting signals from different sensors and controlling air/fuel ratio (rich or lean) based on necessity. Kamura provides the motivation to combine the two teachings to perform a lean-burn operation at an air/fuel ratio leaner than a stoichiometric air/fuel ratio under predetermined operation conditions.

Severinsky in view of Kamura discloses the invention except for air/fuel ratio not more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine. It would have been obvious to one having ordinary skill in the art at the time invention was made to achieve this range, since it has been held that where the general conditions of a claim are disclosed in the prior art, discovering the optimum or workable ranges involves only routine skill in the art. *In re Aller*, 105, USPQ 233.

Art Unit: 3667

9. Claims 20, 31, 43 and 54 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Severinsky (USP 5343970) in view of Myers et al. (USP 5695722).

As per Claims 20 and 31, 43, 54 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. However, Severinsky does not explicitly teach wherein when said engine is rotated at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

However, Severinsky teaches engine 40 having a relatively "flat" output torque versus RPM characteristic--that is, engine 40 producing substantial torque over a wide RPM operating range. See FIG. 14.(Col.12, lines 9-13). It is inherent that the engine has minimum 300 rpm speed.

It would have been obvious to one having ordinary skill in the art at the time invention was made to achieve this range, since it has been held that where the general conditions of a claim are disclosed in the prior art, discovering the optimum or workable ranges involves only routine skill in the art. *In re Aller*, 105, USPQ 233.

However, Myers teaches a catalyst heater assembly, wherein, a heater (11) being mounted at the catalytic converter front end (10) and comprising an electric heater (20) through which the flow of the gas passes and is heated (Abstract ; Col.1, lines 55-65, Col.; Col.1, lines 55-65, Col. , line 65 –Col. 4, line 13, Fig. 1; also see (Abstract : DERWENT).

Both Severinsky and Myers are directed toward vehicle operation. Severinsky teaches Hybrid vehicle cruising in different speed, improved fuel efficiency and reduced pollutant emissions. However, Severinsky does not teach heating the

Art Unit: 3667

engine before supplying fuel. However, Myers teaches heating the engine through catalyst heater assembly.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have included the catalyst heater assembly of Myers and incorporate it into the muffler (64) of Severinsky and configure it with the microcontroller (48) of Severinsky to have the electric heater heat the gas. Kamura provides the motivation to combine the two teachings to provide efficient starting (i.e., fuel efficiency).

10. Claims 22, 33 and 45 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Severinsky (USP 5343970) in view of Yamaguchi (USP 5806617).

As per Claims 22 and 33, 45 , Severinsky teaches the limitation of Claim 17. Severinsky also teaches producing engine torque and motor for accelerating and uphill climbing condition (Abstract). However, Severinsky does not explicitly teach wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to the engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

In the same field of endeavor, Yamaguchi et al. (Yamaguchi) teaches hybrid vehicle , wherein, the vehicle control device 10 being embedded into the hybrid vehicle control system 9, determining most efficient engine torque and motor torque , Col.6, lines 48-53) control device 10, controlling motor torque supplementing engine torque (Col. 1, lines 20-26).

Both Severinsky and Yamaguchi are directed toward hybrid vehicle control. Severinsky teaches Hybrid vehicle cruising in different speed, improved fuel efficiency and reduced pollutant emissions. However, Severinsky does not teach motor producing

Art Unit: 3667

torque equal to engine's MTO. However, Yamaguchi teaches controller producing most efficient engine torque (MTO) and supplementing motor torque to engine torque.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have included the Hybrid vehicle teachings (control system) of Yamaguchi and configure it with the system of Severinsky to control motor producing torque equal to engine maximum torque output while accelerating or hill climbing. Motivation to combine the two is, applying a known technique to a known device (method, or product) ready for improvement to yield predictable results; See MPEP § 214 3.

Conclusion

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to MUHAMMAD SHAFI whose telephone number is (571)270-5741. The examiner can normally be reached on M-F 8:30 AM -5:00 PM.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, James Trammell can be reached on (571)-272-6712. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Art Unit: 3667

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/ms/
Examiner
Art Unit 3667

/James P Trammell/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3667

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. 13/065,704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
*	A US-5,343,970	09-1994	Severinsky, Alex J.	180/65.25
*	B US-5,806,617	09-1998	Yamaguchi, Kozo	180/65.235
*	C US-5,483,939	01-1996	Kamura et al.	123/492
*	D US-5,695,722	12-1997	Myers et al.	422/174
	E US-			
	F US-			
	G US-			
	H US-			
	I US-			
	J US-			
	K US-			
	L US-			
	M US-			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N				
	O				
	P				
	Q				
	R				
	S				
	T				

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)				
	U				
	V				
	W				
	X				


*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.


UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 www.uspto.gov

BIB DATA SHEET
CONFIRMATION NO. 6039

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	
13/065,704	03/29/2011	701	3667	PAICE201.DIV.10	
APPLICANTS Alex J. Severinsky, Washington, DC; Theodore Louckes, Holly, MI, Deceased;					
** CONTINUING DATA ***** This application is a DIV of 12/320,600 01/29/2009 ABN which is a DIV of 11/459,458 07/24/2006 ABN which is a DIV of 10/382,577 03/07/2003 PAT 7,104,347 which is a DIV of 09/822,866 04/02/2001 PAT 6,554,088 which is a CIP of 09/264,817 03/09/1999 PAT 6,209,672 which claims benefit of 60/100,095 09/14/1998 and said 10/382,577 03/07/2003 is a CIP of 09/392,743 09/09/1999 PAT 6,338,391 which claims benefit of 60/122,296 03/01/1999					
** FOREIGN APPLICATIONS *****					
** IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED ** 04/25/2011					
Foreign Priority claimed <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No 35 USC 119(a-d) conditions met <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No Verified and Acknowledged <u>/MUHAMMAD SHAFI/</u> Examiner's Signature	<input type="checkbox"/> Met after Allowance Initials _____	STATE OR COUNTRY DC	SHEETS DRAWINGS 34	TOTAL CLAIMS 1	INDEPENDENT CLAIMS 1
ADDRESS Michael de Angeli 60 Intrepid Lane Jamestown, RI 02835 UNITED STATES					
TITLE Hybrid vehicles					
FILING FEE RECEIVED 3110	FEES: Authority has been given in Paper No. _____ to charge/credit DEPOSIT ACCOUNT No. _____ for following:		<input type="checkbox"/> All Fees <input type="checkbox"/> 1.16 Fees (Filing) <input type="checkbox"/> 1.17 Fees (Processing Ext. of time) <input type="checkbox"/> 1.18 Fees (Issue) <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Credit		


Search Notes 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
701	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
180	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
340	988-996	11/23/2011	ms
123	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
60	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
903	whole class	11/23/2011	ms

SEARCH NOTES			
Search Notes	Date	Examiner	
East Search	11/23/2011	ms	
Inventor Search	11/23/2011	ms	
PLUS Search	11/23/2011	ms	
Text Search	11/23/2011	ms	

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner

--	--

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

✓	Rejected
=	Allowed


-	Cancelled
÷	Restricted

N	Non-Elected
I	Interference

A	Appeal
O	Objected

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
 CPA
 T.D.
 R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE							
Final	Original	06/27/2011	11/25/2011						
	1	÷	-						
	2	÷	-						
	3	÷	-						
	4	÷	-						
	5	÷	-						
	6	÷	-						
	7	÷	-						
	8	÷	-						
	9	÷	-						
	10	÷	-						
	11	÷	-						
	12	÷	-						
	13	÷	-						
	14	÷	-						
	15	÷	-						
	16	÷	-						
	17		✓						
	18		✓						
	19		✓						
	20		✓						
	21		✓						
	22		✓						
	23		✓						
	24		✓						
	25		✓						
	26		✓						
	27		✓						
	28		✓						
	29		✓						
	30		✓						
	31		✓						
	32		✓						
	33		✓						
	34		✓						
	35		✓						
	36		✓						

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

✓	Rejected
=	Allowed

-	Cancelled
÷	Restricted

N	Non-Elected
I	Interference

A	Appeal
O	Objected

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
 CPA
 T.D.
 R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE							
Final	Original	06/27/2011	11/25/2011						
	37		✓						
	38		✓						
	39		✓						
	40		✓						
	41		✓						
	42		✓						
	43		✓						
	44		✓						
	45		✓						
	46		✓						
	47		✓						
	48		✓						
	49		✓						
	50		✓						
	51		✓						
	52		✓						
	53		✓						
	54		✓						
	55		✓						
	56		✓						
	57		✓						
	58		✓						
	59		✓						
	60		✓						
	61		✓						

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
S1	44	((severinsky) near2 (alex)).in.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:22
S2	28	((louckes) near2 (theodore)).in.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:22
S3	46	S1 or S2	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:22
S4	109604	"180"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:25
S5	69384	"701"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S6	7188	340/988-996.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S7	225255	"123"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S8	125235	"60"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26

			USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			09:26
S9	9385	"903"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S10	174176	S4 or S5 or S6	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S11	350102	S7 or S8 or S9	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S12	504210	S10 or S11	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S13	1273	fuel near2 (stoichiometr\$4 adj ratio)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S14	109604	"180"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S15	69384	"701"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S16	7188	340/988-996.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; WENT;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19

S17	225255	"123"/\$.ccls.	IBM_TDB US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S18	125235	"60"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S19	9385	"903"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S20	174176	S14 or S15 or S16	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S21	350102	S17 or S18 or S19	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S22	504210	S20 or S21	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S23	632	S22 and S13	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S24	21	(road adj load) near3 (maximum adj torque adj output)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:20
S25	0	S23 and S24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:20

			EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S26	21	S22 and S24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:20
S27	21	S22 and S24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:21
S28	21	S24 and S27	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:23
S29	0	S13 and S27	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:23
S30	305	parallel adj hybrid adj vehicle	USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/23 13:32
S31	1927	engine and motor and generator and (inverter or charger) and microprocessor and battery	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 13:33
S32	940	S22 and S31	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 13:34
S33	21	S24 and S32	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 13:34
S34	39	S30 and S31	USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/23 13:35
S35	1	("5343970").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/23 17:35
S36	250	motor near3 (maximum adj output adi torque)	US-PGPUB; AT;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:13

			USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S37	3	motor near3 (maximum adj output adj torque) near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:13
S38	0	motor near3 provid\$4 near3(maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:16
S39	250	motor near3(maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:16
S40	14	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 (maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:17
S41	1	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 (maximum adj output adj torque) near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:19
S42	0	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 (equal adj torque) near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:20
S43	0	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 equal near3 (engine adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:21
S44	273	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:21

S45	2	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 equal with engine with torque	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:22
S46	100	engine near2 heat near2 (fuel adj supply)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 08:59
S47	109635	"180"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S48	69478	"701"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S49	7188	340/988-996.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S50	225285	"123"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S51	125278	"60"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S52	9398	"903"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S53	174290	S47 or S48 or S49	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; JPO;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00

			DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S54	350184	S50 or S51 or S52	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S55	504387	S53 or S54	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S56	52	S55 and S46	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S57	133	heat\$3 near2 engine near2 (fuel adj supply)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:01
S58	75	S55 and S57	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:01
S59	0	(hybrid adj vehicle) near2 (catalytic adj converter) near2 heater	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:10
S60	9	(vehicle) near2 (catalytic adj converter) near2 heater	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:11
S61	0	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near2 (fuel adj supply)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:22
S62	222	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; CR;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:22

			FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S63	0	vehicle near (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:23
S64	15	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near3 fuel	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:23
S65	16	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near3 start	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:23
S66	0	controller near3 (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near3 start	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:31
S67	1	controller near3 (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 start	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:31
S68	0	module near2 (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:32
S69	11	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 (maximum adj output)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:48
S70	2	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 equal near3 (engine adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:52
S71	18	("20010049570" "2002005:	GPUB;	OR	OFF	2011/11/25

		"20020071383" "20020079147" "20020112901" "20040055799" "5806617" "5823281" "6233508" "6348771" "6440036" "6522024").PN. OR ("6883626").URPN.	USPAT; USOCR			10:52
S72	0	S70 and S71	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2011/11/25 10:53
S73	50	(("4793599") or ("6002979") or ("4967610") or ("6079258") or ("6086510") or ("6134488") or ("4266628") or ("4298151") or ("4402237") or ("4414946") or ("4531489") or ("4532901") or ("4618041") or ("4625825") or ("4775939") or ("4815263") or ("4846451") or ("4869474") or ("4911211") or ("4945977") or ("4989149") or ("5242273") or ("5279384") or ("5406483") or ("5526261") or ("5528086") or ("5539377") or ("5562085") or ("5634339") or ("5660149") or ("5663880") or ("5665026") or ("5686773") or ("5689142") or ("5838251") or ("5848381") or ("5845612") or ("5858942") or ("5873250") or ("5874785") or ("5896554") or ("5905432") or ("5957663") or ("5970925") or ("5976055") or ("6006146") or ("6026921") or ("6065565") or ("6073507") or ("6188943")).PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/25 14:30

EAST Search History (Interference)

< This search history is empty >

11/ 28/ 2011 10:29:12 AM**C:\ Users\ mshafi\ Documents\ EAST\ Workspaces\ 13065704.wsp**



IFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: Shafi
Serial No.: 13/065,704	:	Group Art Unit: 3667
Filed: March 29, 2011	:	Att.Dkt: PAICE201.DIV.10
For: Hybrid Vehicles	:	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Sir:

Prior art possibly pertinent to the patentability of the invention claimed is listed on a number of PTO-892, PTO/SB/08b, and PTO-1449 forms provided herewith. All but one of these are copies of papers filed in one or more of the parent applications. The single new PTO/SB/08b form lists three references that have recently come to the attention of the undersigned. Copies of the three new references mentioned also submitted herewith.

Early and favorable action on the merits of the application is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
34 Court Street
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

Dated: 12/13/11



Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT <i>(Use as many sheets as necessary)</i>		Complete if Known	
		Application Number	13/065,704
		Filing Date	March 29, 2011
		First Named Inventor	Severinsky
		Art Unit	3667
		Examiner Name	Shafi
Sheet 1	of 1	Attorney Docket Number	PAICE201.DIV.10

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
		SUTHERLAND, A State Language for the Sequencing in a Hybrid Electric Vehicle, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec., Vol. 1E-30, No. 4, 318-322 (1983)	
		SOMUAH, A Microcomputer-Controlled Powertrain for a Hybrid Vehicle, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec., Vol. 1E-30, No. 2, 126-131 (1983)	
		BOSE, A Microcomputer-Based Propulsion Conro System of a Hybrid Electric Vehicle, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec., Vol. 1E-31, No. 1, 61-68 (1983)	

Examiner Signature	Date Considered
--------------------	-----------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.
¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.
 This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 (1-800-786-9199) and select option 2.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO., EXAMINER, ART UNIT, PAPER NUMBER, MAIL DATE, DELIVERY MODE. Includes application details for Alex J. Severinsky and examiner SHAFL MUHAMMAD.

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Applicant-Initiated Interview Summary	Application No. 13/065,704	Applicant(s) SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

- (1) MUHAMMAD SHAFI. (3) _____.
- (2) Atty. Michael De Angeli. (4) _____.

Date of Interview: 18 January 2012.

Type: Telephonic Video Conference
 Personal [copy given to: applicant applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: Yes No.
If Yes, brief description: _____.

Issues Discussed 101 112 102 103 Others
(For each of the checked box(es) above, please describe below the issue and detailed description of the discussion)

Claim(s) discussed: Yes.

Identification of prior art discussed: Yes.

Substance of Interview

(For each issue discussed, provide a detailed description and indicate if agreement was reached. Some topics may include: identification or clarification of a reference or a portion thereof, claim interpretation, proposed amendments, arguments of any applied references etc...)

Atty. Michael De Angeli came to USPTO to discuss Prior Art rejection and claim limitations. The argument presented by Atty. De Angeli was persuasive. Atty. DeAngeli indicated that the would amend the claims. Examiner indicated that it would require further search and consideration. Further consideration will be given upon filing of a formal reply to Office Action. The claimed invention stands rejected until then..

Applicant recordation instructions: The formal written reply to the last Office action must include the substance of the interview. (See MPEP section 713.04). If a reply to the last Office action has already been filed, applicant is given a non-extendable period of the longer of one month or thirty days from this interview date, or the mailing date of this interview summary form, whichever is later, to file a statement of the substance of the interview

Examiner recordation instructions: Examiners must summarize the substance of any interview of record. A complete and proper recordation of the substance of an interview should include the items listed in MPEP 713.04 for complete and proper recordation including the identification of the general thrust of each argument or issue discussed, a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed regarding patentability and the general results or outcome of the interview, to include an indication as to whether or not agreement was reached on the issues raised.

Attachment

/M. S./
Examiner, Art Unit 3667

Summary of Record of Interview Requirements

Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP), Section 713.04, Substance of Interview Must be Made of Record

A complete written statement as to the substance of any face-to-face, video conference, or telephone interview with regard to an application must be made of record in the application whether or not an agreement with the examiner was reached at the interview.

Title 37 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) § 1.133 Interviews

Paragraph (b)

In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office action as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135. (35 U.S.C. 132)

37 CFR §1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent or Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

The action of the Patent and Trademark Office cannot be based exclusively on the written record in the Office if that record is itself incomplete through the failure to record the substance of interviews.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or the attorney or agent to make the substance of an interview of record in the application file, unless the examiner indicates he or she will do so. It is the examiner's responsibility to see that such a record is made and to correct material inaccuracies which bear directly on the question of patentability.

Examiners must complete an Interview Summary Form for each interview held where a matter of substance has been discussed during the interview by checking the appropriate boxes and filling in the blanks. Discussions regarding only procedural matters, directed solely to restriction requirements for which interview recordation is otherwise provided for in Section 812.01 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, or pointing out typographical errors or unreadable script in Office actions or the like, are excluded from the interview recordation procedures below. Where the substance of an interview is completely recorded in an Examiners Amendment, no separate Interview Summary Record is required.

The Interview Summary Form shall be given an appropriate Paper No., placed in the right hand portion of the file, and listed on the "Contents" section of the file wrapper. In a personal interview, a duplicate of the Form is given to the applicant (or attorney or agent) at the conclusion of the interview. In the case of a telephone or video-conference interview, the copy is mailed to the applicant's correspondence address either with or prior to the next official communication. If additional correspondence from the examiner is not likely before an allowance or if other circumstances dictate, the Form should be mailed promptly after the interview rather than with the next official communication.

The Form provides for recordation of the following information:

- Application Number (Series Code and Serial Number)
- Name of applicant
- Name of examiner
- Date of interview
- Type of interview (telephonic, video-conference, or personal)
- Name of participant(s) (applicant, attorney or agent, examiner, other PTO personnel, etc.)
- An indication whether or not an exhibit was shown or a demonstration conducted
- An identification of the specific prior art discussed
- An indication whether an agreement was reached and if so, a description of the general nature of the agreement (may be by attachment of a copy of amendments or claims agreed as being allowable). Note: Agreement as to allowability is tentative and does not restrict further action by the examiner to the contrary.
- The signature of the examiner who conducted the interview (if Form is not an attachment to a signed Office action)

It is desirable that the examiner orally remind the applicant of his or her obligation to record the substance of the interview of each case. It should be noted, however, that the Interview Summary Form will not normally be considered a complete and proper recordation of the interview unless it includes, or is supplemented by the applicant or the examiner to include, all of the applicable items required below concerning the substance of the interview.

A complete and proper recordation of the substance of any interview should include at least the following applicable items:

- 1) A brief description of the nature of any exhibit shown or any demonstration conducted,
- 2) an identification of the claims discussed,
- 3) an identification of the specific prior art discussed,
- 4) an identification of the principal proposed amendments of a substantive nature discussed, unless these are already described on the Interview Summary Form completed by the Examiner,
- 5) a brief identification of the general thrust of the principal arguments presented to the examiner,
(The identification of arguments need not be lengthy or elaborate. A verbatim or highly detailed description of the arguments is not required. The identification of the arguments is sufficient if the general nature or thrust of the principal arguments made to the examiner can be understood in the context of the application file. Of course, the applicant may desire to emphasize and fully describe those arguments which he or she feels were or might be persuasive to the examiner.)
- 6) a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed, and
- 7) if appropriate, the general results or outcome of the interview unless already described in the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner.

Examiners are expected to carefully review the applicant's record of the substance of an interview. If the record is not complete and accurate, the examiner will give the applicant an extendable one month time period to correct the record.

Examiner to Check for Accuracy

If the claims are allowable for other reasons of record, the examiner should send a letter setting forth the examiner's version of the statement attributed to him or her. If the record is complete and accurate, the examiner should place the indication, "Interview Record OK" on the paper recording the substance of the interview along with the date and the examiner's initials.



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al

:
: Examiner: Shafi

Serial No.: 13/065,704

:
: Group Art Unit: 3667

Filed: March 29, 2011

:
: Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.10

For: Hybrid Vehicles

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

AMENDMENT

Sir:

In response to the Office Action mailed December 1, 2011 setting a shortened statutory period for response to expire March 1, 2012, kindly amend the above-identified application as follows:

IN THE CLAIMS

1 - 16 (Cancelled)

17. (Currently amended) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a battery, a controller, wheels, an internal combustion engine and at least one electric motor, wherein both the internal combustion engine and motor are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle, and wherein said engine has an inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, said method comprising the steps of:

operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to provide torque to operate the vehicle;

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

employing said controller to control the engine such that a rate of ~~change~~ increase of output torque of the engine is limited to ~~no more than a predetermined value~~ less than said inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, and wherein said step of controlling the engine such that the rate of increase of output torque of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a substantially stoichiometric ratio.

18. (Cancelled)

19. (Currently amended) The method of claim ~~[[18]]~~ 17, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a ~~near~~ substantially ~~[[-]]~~ stoichiometric ratio.

20. (Currently amended) The method of claim 17, wherein when it is desired to start said engine, said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated, prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

21. (Currently amended) The method of claim ~~[[17]]~~ 20, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

22. (Previously presented) The method of claim 17, wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to the engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

23. (Previously presented) The method of claim 17, comprising the further steps of:

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the torque required to operate the vehicle is greater than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO), and

operating said electric motor as a generator to accept torque from said engine to charge said battery when the torque required to operate the vehicle is less than ITO.

24. (Previously presented) The method of claim 17, comprising the further steps of:

operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; and

operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP.

25. (Previously presented) The method of claim 24, further comprising the step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

26. (Previously presented) The method of claim 17, further comprising the step of:

operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, wherein torque produced by the engine equal to the torque required to propel the vehicle (RL) is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery.

27. (Previously presented) The method of claim 17, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a voltage of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

28. (Previously presented) The method of claim 17, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

29. (Currently amended) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a battery, a controller, wheels, an internal combustion engine and at least one electric motor, wherein both the internal combustion engine and motor are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle, wherein said engine has an inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, said method comprising the steps of:

operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to provide torque to operate the vehicle;

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque being provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

employing said controller to control the engine such that a rate of ~~change~~ increase of output torque of the engine is limited to ~~no more than a predetermined value~~ less than said inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, and such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a ~~near~~ substantially ~~[-]~~ stoichiometric ratio.

30. (Currently amended) The method of claim 29, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a ~~near~~ substantially ~~[-]~~ stoichiometric ratio.

31. (Currently amended) The method of claim 29, wherein when it is desired to start said engine, said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated, prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

32. (Currently amended) The hybrid vehicle of claim ~~[[29]]~~ 31, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

33. (Previously presented) The method of claim 29, wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to the engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

34. (Previously presented) The method of claim 29, comprising the further step of:

operating said electric motor as a generator to accept excess torque from said engine to charge said battery when the torque required to operate the vehicle is less than the engine's ITO.

35. (Previously presented) The method of claim 29, comprising the further steps of:

operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; and

operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP.

36. (Previously presented) The method of claim 35, further comprising the step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

37. (Previously presented) The method of claim 35, further comprising the step of:

operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, wherein torque produced by the engine equal to the torque required to propel the vehicle (RL) is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery.

38. (Previously presented) The method of claim 29, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a voltage of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

39. (Previously presented) The method of claim 29, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a current of no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

40. (Previously presented) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a battery, a controller, wheels, an internal combustion engine and at least one electric motor, wherein both the internal combustion engine and motor are capable of providing torque to the wheels of said vehicle, and wherein said engine has an inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, comprising the steps of:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is between SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when RL is more than MTO; and

employing said controller to control ~~controlling~~ the engine such that a rate of ~~change~~ increase of output torque ~~output~~ of the engine is limited to less than said inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, and, if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor, and wherein said step of controlling the engine such that the rate of change of output torque of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a substantially stoichiometric ratio.

41. (Cancelled)

42. (Currently amended) The method of claim ~~[[41]]~~ 40, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a ~~near~~ substantially~~[-]~~stoichiometric ratio.

43. (Currently amended) The method of claim 40, wherein when it is desired to start said engine, said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated, prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

44. (Currently amended) The method of claim ~~[[40]]~~ 43, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

45. (Previously presented) The method of claim 40, wherein said at least one electric motor produces torque at least equal to MTO.

46. (Previously presented) The method of claim 40, comprising the further steps of:

operating said electric motor as a generator powered by said engine to charge said battery when RL is less than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO); and

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when RL is greater than the engine's instantaneous torque output (ITO).

47. (Previously presented) The method of claim 40, further comprising the step of operating the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

48. (Previously presented) The method of claim 40, further comprising the step of:

operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, and wherein torque produced by the engine equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery.

49. (Previously presented) The method of claim 40, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a voltage of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

50. (Previously presented) The method of claim 40, wherein energy is supplied to the motor from the battery at a current of no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

51. (Currently amended) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels, wherein said engine has an inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque;

at least one electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the at least one electric motor, operable to provide electrical power to the at least one electric motor; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the at least one electric motor, and the one or more wheels, responsive to an operator command;

wherein said controller controls said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque being provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

wherein said controller controls said engine such that a rate of ~~change~~ increase of output torque ~~output of said engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value~~ less than said inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, and wherein the controller is operable to limit the rate of change of torque produced by the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a substantially stoichiometric ratio.

52. (Cancelled)

53. (Currently amended) The hybrid vehicle of claim ~~[[52]]~~ 51, wherein the amount of oxygen in an exhaust stream from said engine is monitored to ensure that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a ~~near~~ substantially~~[-]~~stoichiometric ratio.

54. (Currently amended) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein when it is desired to start said engine, said engine is rotated at at least 300 rpm, whereby the engine is heated, prior to supply of fuel for starting the engine.

55. (Currently amended) The hybrid vehicle of claim ~~[[51]]~~ 54, wherein fuel and air are supplied to said engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine.

56. (Previously presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the controller stops the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle, to charge the battery, or both, is less than SP.

57. (Previously presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the ~~battery~~ at least one electric motor is operable to ~~be charged~~ charge the battery when the instantaneous torque output of the internal combustion engine is greater than the amount of torque required to propel the

vehicle, when the amount of torque required to propel the vehicle is negative, or when braking is initiated by the operator.

58. (Previously presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the maximum torque available for supply to the one or more wheels from the at least one electric motor is at least equal to the maximum torque available for supply to the one or more wheels from the engine.

59. (Previously presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein the controller is operable to start and operate the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions.

60. (Previously presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein energy is supplied from the battery to the motor at a peak of at least 500 volts under peak load conditions.

61. (Previously presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 51, wherein energy is supplied from the battery to the motor at no more than about 75 amperes under peak load conditions.

REMARKS

The Examiner is thanked for his courtesy in extending a personal interview to the undersigned on January 18, 2012.

In the December 1, 2011 office action, the Examiner made a 35 USC § 112 objection to claims 18, 19, 29, 39 [sic – should be 30], 41, 42, 52, and 53 on the ground that the recitation in these claims that combustion in the internal combustion engine (ICE) of the hybrid vehicle defined by these claims was to take place at a “near-stoichiometric” ratio was indefinite. The subject matter of claims 18, 41 and 52 has been incorporated into the corresponding independent claims 17, 40 and 51. These and claims 19, 29, 30, 42 and 53 have all been amended to recite that combustion is to take place at a “substantially” stoichiometric ratio. It is respectfully submitted that the alleged indefiniteness has thus been eliminated.

More specifically, the claims of this application are largely directed to control of the combustion of fuel in an ICE of a hybrid vehicle so that the fuel is combusted efficiently. Ideally, combustion would take place at precisely the stoichiometric ratio, whereby the fuel:air mixture that is provided to the ICE is neither “rich” (containing more fuel than can be combusted in the amount of air provided), nor “lean” (containing more air than is needed for the complete combustion of the amount of fuel provided). Rich mixtures lead to unburned fuel in the exhaust, which is wasteful of fuel and can contribute to undesirable emissions, while over-lean mixtures can lead to increased combustion temperatures and formation of different undesired emissions.

Moreover, according to one aspect of the invention, and as recited in some of the pending dependent claims (see, e.g., claim 19), the amount of oxygen in the exhaust stream from the ICE is monitored and fed back to the ICE controller (which includes the fuel metering system) to control the amount of fuel supplied, the goal being to control the fuel supplied so that combustion takes place at a substantially stoichiometric ratio.

In practical applications using, for example, an oxygen sensor to monitor the operation of the ICE, the mixture will be controlled to be minimally lean; in this way a controller responsive to an oxygen sensor in the exhaust system can effectively control combustion so as not to be rich.

Further, combustion at precisely the stoichiometric ratio may not be achievable due to, for example, delay in the response of the ICE controller to transients in the amount of torque required and thus the amount of fuel provided, such that a claim requiring precisely stoichiometric combustion would be difficult to meet.

It is respectfully submitted, therefore, that recitation of “substantially stoichiometric” in the pending claims is definite within the requirements of 35 USC § 112.

Another important aspect of the invention, and that to which the independent claims are directed, is the control of fuel supplied to the ICE under transient conditions, primarily conditions in which the vehicle operator requires an increase in torque from the vehicle, e.g., for acceleration or hill-climbing.

More specifically, it will be apparent that to be acceptable in the marketplace a hybrid vehicle must provide adequate “drivability”; that is, it must respond to the operator’s commands in a timely fashion. In particular, to provide a satisfactory driving experience, when the operator depresses the accelerator pedal the vehicle must respond by providing additional torque to the drive wheels as rapidly as possible.

In a conventional (that is, non-hybrid) vehicle, drivability in this sense is typically provided in two ways. A first method of providing adequate torque for drivability is simply sizing the ICE sufficiently large that it can provide significant additional torque on demand. As discussed in the present application at length, under typical circumstances the ICE of such a conventional vehicle is operated at much lower torque outputs, because acceleration and hill-climbing are required for little of the total time the vehicle is driven; that is, much of ordinary driving is highway cruising and low-speed operation in traffic, where relatively little torque is required. Also as discussed in the application as filed, this practice is highly inefficient, as an

ICE by its nature uses fuel more efficiently at higher torque output levels. For this reason one principal aspect of the invention is to size the ICE so that it is operated at relatively high torque output at substantially all times – specifically, so that the ICE is operated at relatively high output torque levels during highway cruising, and is relatively heavily loaded when used for battery charging, or when used for both propulsion and battery charging - and to provide an electric “traction” motor to provide additional torque when needed.

Another aspect of the invention, which is addressed specifically by the independent claims now pending in this application, has to do with providing drivability – again, good response to an increase in the torque demanded – without inefficient use of fuel. To fully understand this aspect of the invention it is again necessary to consider first what is done in conventional vehicles.

A second way of providing drivability in a conventional vehicle, that is, in order to increase the maximum rate of increase of torque provided by an ICE in a conventional vehicle, is to provide a “super-rich” fuel:air mixture for a few seconds upon indication of a rapid increase in the amount of output torque desired.

Such a sudden richening of the fuel:air mixture does indeed provide more rapid increase in the rate of change of torque output by the engine, but some of the fuel is not combusted (at least in part as the rate of air supply does not increase as rapidly) and is wasted. This is inefficient, and can lead to undesired emission of unburned fuel.

According to the present invention, this enrichening of the fuel:air mixture, and the consequent waste of fuel, is to be avoided, and substantially stoichiometric combustion is to be maintained at substantially all times. However, drivability – that is, rapid increase in the torque provided to the wheels in response to an operator’s command – is nonetheless essential to a commercially viable vehicle. The at least one electric “traction” motor of the hybrid vehicle is instead employed to provide a rapid increase in the torque to be provided to the wheels of the vehicle, providing drivability.

The claims of the present application therefore recite, as in the following from claim 17 as amended:

operating said at least one electric motor to provide additional torque when the amount of torque provided by said engine is less than the amount of torque required to operate the vehicle; and

employing said controller to control the engine such that a rate of increase of output torque of the engine is limited to less than said inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, and wherein said step of controlling the engine such the rate of increase of output torque of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a substantially stoichiometric ratio.

According to this explicit recitation, the rate of increase of torque output by the ICE is limited by the controller to less than the inherent maximum rate of increase in output torque of the ICE, and any shortfall in the torque required to meet the operator's requirements – that is, to provide drivability – is supplied by torque from the traction motor. Claim 17 has also been amended to recite that the engine has an inherent maximum rate of increase in the torque output. Claim 17 has also been amended to include the limitations of claim 18, that is, to recite that the rate of increase in output torque is limited so that combustion of fuel in the ICE takes place substantially at the stoichiometric ratio. This aspect of the invention is discussed at pages 70 - 71 of the application as filed. Similar amendments have been made to the other independent claims. Claim 40 has also been amended to explicitly recite the components of the vehicle, including the controller. Finally, note that the claims have been amended to refer to limitation of the rate of increase of torque output, rather than the rate of change thereof, as decreases in torque in a conventional engine do not involve rich mixtures, such that the improvement claimed is primarily relevant to increases in the engine's output torque.

It will be appreciated that what is being claimed here is that the controller limits the rate of increase of torque output by the engine. That is, all engines have an inherent limitation on the maximum rate of increase at which they can supply torque responsive to increase in fuel supplied. This inherent limitation on the rate of increase of torque output is largely a factor of such mechanical parameters as flywheel inertia, inertia of other rotating and reciprocating components, limitations of air flow, internal friction, and the like. Engines are optimized as to

these and other parameters for their intended use. Engines for use in relatively slowly accelerating vehicles, such as heavy trucks, are typically capable of increasing their torque output only very slowly, while engines intended for racing cars and the like which require fast acceleration must have a very high rate of increase of torque output. Passenger car engines are somewhere in between, varying over a wide range depending on the designer's choice, although in general faster rates of increase are desired for better acceleration; the tradeoff is reduced fuel economy, increased cost, and other negative factors.

However, in all such cases of which the present inventor is aware, the maximum rate of increase of torque output by the engine is not limited by the controller as claimed; the limitation is purely inherent in the engine design. As claimed herein, the controller imposes a further, non-inherent limitation on the rate of increase of torque output by the engine. This is done so that the "super-rich" fuel:air mixtures mentioned above, and indeed substantially all rich mixtures, can be avoided in favor of substantially stoichiometric combustion at all times, yielding further improvement in fuel usage efficiency and reduction of undesired exhaust emissions. According to the invention, drivability is not impaired, as the electric traction motor can provide substantially instantaneous increase in torque output in response to an operator command. The output of the ICE can then be more gradually increased.

Claim 17 and the other independent claims have accordingly been amended to make explicit that the rate of increase of engine output torque is controlled by the controller to be less than the engine's inherent maximum rate of increase in output torque, and further to recite that this is done so that combustion can be controlled to occur at substantially the stoichiometric ratio. This is not shown in the prior art of record, nor rendered obvious thereby.

Turning to the specific rejections made by the Examiner, claim 17 was rejected under 35 USC § 102 as anticipated by Severinsky patent 5,343,970 (the "'970 patent" hereafter). Similar rejections were made to independent claims 40 and 51. With all respect, the invention defined by these claims, as amended, is not shown by the '970 patent.

The Examiner makes the statement (p. 3 of office action) that the '970 patent shows using the controller "to control the engine...such that a rate of change of torque output of the engine is limited to no more than a predetermined value (via engine producing substantial torque over a wide RPM operating range, Col. 12, lines 7 – 13. In Fig. 14, O-C being torque range, after that torque decreases with increase in RPM)."

The cited passage from Col. 12 of the '970 patent reads as follows:

To allow engine 40 to be connected to wheels 34 without a variable-speed transmission while being operable over a wide range of road speeds, [engine and] engine 40 has a relatively "flat" output torque versus RPM characteristic--that is, engine 40 produces substantial torque over a wide RPM operating range. See FIG. 14.

This passage simply specifies the preferred "inherent" characteristics of the ICE to be employed, and says nothing about the controller's limiting the rate of increase of torque output by the engine above and beyond its inherent characteristics, as explained above and as claimed.

More specifically, the flat torque curve as described in the cited passage from the '970 patent describes the maximum amount of torque that can be output by the engine at a given RPM. It says nothing about the rate at which the amount of torque can be increased in response to an operator command, and certainly does not relate to employing the controller to limit the rate of increase of torque over time, as claimed.

It is respectfully submitted that the '970 patent neither anticipates claim 17 nor renders it obvious, and the rejection based thereon should be reconsidered and withdrawn.

The Examiner's reference to "O-C" in Fig. 14 of the '970 patent is also erroneous. O-C is simply the lower portion of the motor's operating range, in which its torque output is constant with increasing RPM; at motor speeds above C, the motor torque drops off with RPM, as shown by line A in Fig. 14. Line B in Fig.14 shows the engine's preferred "flat" torque vs. RPM characteristic, as described in the passage quoted above from the '970 patent. See col. 13, lines 30 – 64 of the '970 patent.

The Examiner likewise applied the '970 patent under 35 USC § 102 as an alleged anticipation of independent claims 40 and 51. These include the same limitation regarding the controller's limiting the rate of increase of torque output by the engine as claim 17, distinguish similarly over the '970 patent, and are likewise allowable.

Independent claim 29 also includes this limitation, and also includes the limitation that the ICE is operated at a "near" (now "substantially") stoichiometric fuel:air ratio; as noted, the other independent claims now also include the latter limitation. As to this, the examiner cited the following from the '970 patent (col. 12, lines 13 – 22):

To lower the toxic hydrocarbon and carbon monoxide emissions from combustion, the engine 40 will be operated in lean burn mode (that is, air will be supplied slightly in excess of the amount required for stoichiometric combustion) to achieve complete combustion. To lower nitrogen oxide emissions, the engine will be operated at a lower temperature and thus at slightly reduced thermodynamic efficiency (e.g., 2-3% lower) than is a conventional engine.

The '970 patent thus suggests operating the engine in a "lean-burn" mode, that is, where the fuel:air ratio is lean with respect to the stoichiometric ratio. This "lean-burn" operation is not the same as the "substantially stoichiometric" operation recited in the independent claims of this application.

Moreover, the '970 patent does not teach having the controller limit the rate of increase of torque specifically so that rich mixtures can be avoided, as claimed, and so that combustion can be controlled to occur at a substantially stoichiometric ratio, as also now claimed in all of the independent claims. Hence claim 29 is neither anticipated nor rendered obvious by the '970 patent, and is allowable. Claims 17, 40 and 51, having now been amended to recite that combustion takes place at a substantially stoichiometric ratio, likewise clearly distinguish over the art cited.

The dependent claims are allowable as dependent on allowable independent claims, as above.

There are also a few apparent misunderstandings concerning the claims, which should be clarified. For example, as to claims 25, 36, 47, [56 - sic – apparently an error] and 59 the Examiner interprets “abnormal and transient conditions” wherein the engine can be run at output levels less than SP, the minimum power output of the engine under normal circumstances, as “in traffic or city driv[ing] too many traffic light so too many stops and reverse operation.” In fact, city traffic and reverse operation are normal conditions and are explicitly provided for. In both, the vehicle typically operates as an electric car, with the traction motor providing the torque necessary to propel the vehicle, and with the ICE operated to charge the battery when it is discharged. The “abnormal and transient conditions” referred to are such conditions as starting the engine, during which operation it must necessarily be operated at less than SP for a short time.

As to claims 40 and 46, the Examiner states that the ‘970 patent teaches determination of road load (RL), comparing RL to SP, and determining whether to supply the torque required from the ICE, traction motor, or both. This is not in fact the case, as the ‘970 patent teaches making such “mode switching” determinations based on the vehicle speed, not the road load RL. See col. 18, lines 34 – 40:

At moderate speeds, as experienced in suburban driving, the speed of the vehicle on average is between 30-45 mph. The vehicle will operate in a highway mode with the engine running constantly after the vehicle reaches a speed of 30-35 mph. The engine will continue to run unless the engine speed is reduced to 20-25 mph for a period of time, typically 2-3 minutes.

Likewise, at col. 17, lines 34 – 45:

In further explanation of the operation of the vehicle of the invention, there are typically two modes of operation at slow speed, that is, at up to about 25-35 mph, depending on the state of charge of the battery 22. Because the engine 40 is cycled on and off in this speed range when the average power demand is small, in one mode the system is operated as a pure electric drive system (as in FIG. 4) and in the other mode it is operated as a differential drive system.

When the battery 22 is fully charged, and the vehicle speed is below about 25-35 mph, the microprocessor 48 disconnects the engine 40 from the drive and shuts it off. Under these circumstances only the motor 20 provides power to drive the vehicle.

Thus it is clear that the '970 patent does not in fact teach mode switching based on RL, but on vehicle speed. Mode switching based on RL is fundamentally different from mode switching based on vehicle speed. RL may be a function of numerous factors, including desired acceleration or deceleration, rolling resistance, wind resistance, inclination of the road surface, and others. Vehicle speed is a single measured parameter and ignores these factors. Accordingly, mode switching based on RL addresses, for example, cases where high loads are encountered at low speeds (e.g., accelerating up an on-ramp) or low loads occur at high speeds (e.g., coming over a hilltop at highway speed), whereas mode switching based on vehicle speed does not.

Claims 19, 21, 30, 32, 42, 44, 53 and 55 were rejected under 35 USC § 103 on the combination of the '970 patent and Kamura et al patent 5,483,939. The Examiner states that the '970 patent fails to show the provision of an oxygen sensor for monitoring the fuel:air ratio, but that this is supplied by Kamura, and further states that both the '970 patent and Kamura are directed to hybrid vehicle operation control. Applicant agrees that Kamura shows an oxygen sensor in the exhaust stream of an ICE for controlling the fuel:air mixture. However, contrary to the Examiner's assertion, Kamura is not directed to control of the fuel:air mixture in hybrid vehicles. In fact, Kamura is directed to solving certain problems that occur in conventional lean-burn engines due to the fact that such engines are supplied with a rich mixture when a sudden increase in torque is called for, all as discussed above.

More specifically, Kamura states as follows (Col. 11, line 62 – col. 12, line 28):

Since the control system operates as described above, fuel injection control is performed as will be described next when an accelerated stoichiometric-burn operation corresponding to an acceleration is performed in the course of a lean-burn operation and as shown by way of example in FIG. 6, an operation is then performed to achieve an acceleration again subsequent to ending of the former acceleration.

In an accelerated state, first, an accelerated stoichiometric-burn operation air/fuel ratio has been set and an accelerated stoichiometric-burn operation is under way. When the acceleration has ended, a leanburn operation air/fuel ratio is set and the operation is switched to a lean-burn operation.

If the vehicle is operated at a high speed immediately after the above switching, the

acceleration criterion α is set at the large value (α_1) for a predetermined time (time: X seconds, for example). Even if as shown by a dashed line in the diagram, the driver depresses the accelerator pedal and increases the throttle valve position deviation ΔTPS with a view to coping with a drop in the vehicle speed due to occurrence of a substantial torque down subsequent to switching to a lean-burn operation, the throttle valve position deviation ΔTPS so increased is not determined as an acceleration so that the lean-burn operation is maintained. Needless to say, if the accelerator pedal is depressed to actually achieve a further acceleration instead of such a depression of the accelerator pedal as maintaining the vehicle speed subsequent to switching to the lean-burn operation, the driver usually conducts a substantial depression of the accelerator pedal so that the throttle valve position deviation ΔTPS becomes extremely large and is hence determined as an acceleration. The air/fuel ratio is therefore switched again from a lean value to an accelerated stoichiometric value.

Thus, although the text is not as clear as might be desired, it is apparent that Kamura's system goes from a lean-burn operation to stoichiometric or rich (see col. 9, line 33) when acceleration is demanded. The problem addressed by Kamura occurs when the system transitions back to lean-burn operation; the driver feels a drop off in torque and presses the accelerator pedal again, leading to a repeated acceleration operation, and so on. By contrast, according to the present invention, the traction motor is instead employed to provide the additional torque needed, and the rich mixtures can be eliminated entirely, thus avoiding waste of fuel as well as the complexities of the Kamura system. Thus claims 19, 21, 30, 32, 42, 44, 53 and 55 are not rendered obvious by the combination of the '970 patent and Kamura.

Dependent claims 21, 32, 44, and 55 recite that fuel and air are supplied to the engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine. This is in contrast to the conventional practice of supplying an extremely rich (e.g., 6 or 7 times stoichiometric) mixture for starting. As discussed in the application as filed (see pp. 53-54) provision of such a rich mixture is necessary to start a conventional engine, especially when cold, because most of the fuel condenses on the cold cylinder wall; as only fuel in vapor form ignites responsive to a spark, provision of a very rich mixture is necessary to ensure that some reasonable fraction of the fuel is present in vapor form. According to the invention, the engine is preheated by rotation at a relatively high rate, e.g., at least 300 RPM, for a period of time prior to supply of fuel. Compression of air in the cylinders warms them such that a rich mixture is not needed.

This rotation of the engine at high RPM prior to supply of fuel is recited in dependent claims 20, 31, 43 and 54. Dependent claims 21, 32, 44, and 55 discussed above, reciting that fuel and air are supplied to the engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine, have been amended to depend from the corresponding claims 20, 31, 43 and 54, respectively, to make it clear that it is because the engine is thus rotated at high RPM to heat it prior to supply of fuel for starting that the fuel:air ratio can be comparatively lean. Corrections have also been made to claims 20, 31, 43 and 54.

Claims 21, 32, 44, and 55 discussed above, reciting that fuel and air are supplied to the engine at a fuel:air ratio of no more than 1.2 of the stoichiometric ratio for starting the engine, were rejected on the combination of the '970 patent with Kamura, while dependent claims 20, 31, 43 and 54, reciting rotation of the engine at high RPM prior to supply of fuel for starting it (and having been amended to make it clear that this is done when it is desired to start the engine), were rejected on the '970 patent combined with Myers patent 5,695,722. Neither rejection is supportable, and the amendment discussed above to effectively combine the two sets of dependent claims renders these rejections further inappropriate.

The Examiner asserts in effect that Kamura's teaching of lean-burn combustion is an inherent teaching of the 1.2 times stoichiometric fuel:air ratio recited based on case law stating that there is nothing unobvious about optimizing a range. This 1.2 ratio is a rich mixture, not a lean mixture. However, this is not the point. Kamura suggests nothing about control of the fuel:air ratio during starting. Insofar as Kamura's specific teachings are concerned, the Kamura engine might well use a super-rich mixture for starting, as is conventional; certainly there is nothing to suggest otherwise. Further, there is certainly nothing in Kamura about preheating the engine by rotating it at high RPM prior to supply of fuel. Note further that cold starts are less of an issue in Kamura because Kamura is not directed to a hybrid vehicle, and accordingly the engine is started only once per trip, whereas the ICE of a hybrid vehicle may be started dozens of times in a given trip.

To make the record clear, the Examiner's attention is directed to the discussion on page 53 of the application where it is acknowledged that the art does recognize generally that high-

RPM starting can be employed to limit the extent to which excessively rich mixtures are needed for starting a cold engine. However, the art so far as known does not suggest preheating the engine per se by rotating it at high speed prior to supply of fuel for starting, merely that high-RPM starting can provide better combustion.

The Examiner also asserts that the Myers patent shows “heating the engine through catalyst heater assembly.” This is simply erroneous. Myers teaches preheating a catalytic converter assembly so that it is effective in combusting unburned hydrocarbons immediately after the engine is started. But this is a very different thing than preheating the engine itself. Moreover, Myers teaches preheating the catalytic converter using an electric heater, not by rotating the engine at high RPM to heat it by compression of air in its cylinders, as claimed.

These claims are allowable for these reasons, and also as dependent on allowable independent claims, as above.

In conclusion, all of the independent claims and thus all of the remaining claims include the limitation that the rate of increase of output torque of the engine of the hybrid vehicle of the claims is limited by the controller of the hybrid vehicle to be less than the engine’s inherent maximum rate of increase in output torque. The advantage of thus limiting the rate of increase of torque output by the engine is that the engine can be controlled to combust fuel substantially at the stoichiometric fuel:air ratio, as claimed. Thus, combustion can be maintained substantially stoichiometric regardless of rapid variation in the operator’s demand for torque to be supplied to the vehicle wheels, while any shortfall in the torque required to propel the vehicle can be provided by an electric motor of the hybrid vehicle. This advantage is now recited explicitly in all of the independent claims and is not shown nor rendered obvious by the art of record.

Withdrawal of the rejections made and allowance of the application are earnestly solicited.

Dated: 2/25/12

Respectfully submitted,



Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
34 Court Street
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190



JFW

THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: Shafi
	:	
Serial No.: 13/065,704	:	Group Art Unit: 3667
	:	
Filed: March 29, 2011	:	Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.10
	:	
For: Hybrid Vehicles	:	

TRANSMITTAL OF AMENDMENT

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above - identified application.

A check for the additional claim fee of \$ 0.00 as calculated below is enclosed for this amendment.

A credit card charge form for the additional claim fee of \$0 as calculated below is enclosed for this amendment.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any underpayment (or to credit overpayment) to our Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is attached.

				<u>LARGE ENTITY</u>	
<u>TOTAL</u>		<u>CLAIMS</u>		<u>PRESENT</u>	
<u>CLAIMS</u>		<u>PREVIOUSLY</u>		<u>EXTRA</u>	
		<u>PAID FOR</u>			
TOTAL	41	45	=	0	Extra x 60 \$ 0.00
INDEP.	4	4	=	0	Extra x 250 \$ 0.00
					<u>TOTAL: \$ 0.00</u>

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: 2/29/12



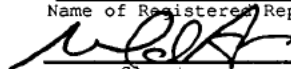
Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
34 Court Street
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

**** CERTIFICATE OF MAILING ****

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being mailed with adequate postage on the date below via the US Postal Service, and addressed to Hon. Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Arlington VA 22313-1450.

Michael de Angeli

Name of Registered Representative



Signature

2/29/12
Date

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 13/065,704	Filing Date 03/29/2011	<input type="checkbox"/> To be Mailed
---	---	----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I			OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY				
(Column 1)		(Column 2)	SMALL ENTITY <input type="checkbox"/>		OR	SMALL ENTITY	
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)
<input type="checkbox"/> BASIC FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
<input type="checkbox"/> SEARCH FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
<input type="checkbox"/> EXAMINATION FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
TOTAL CLAIMS <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	minus 20 =	*	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	minus 3 =	*	X \$ =			X \$ =	
<input type="checkbox"/> APPLICATION SIZE FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$250 (\$125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).						
<input type="checkbox"/> MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>							
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.			TOTAL			TOTAL	

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II					OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY				
(Column 1)		(Column 2)	(Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY		OR	SMALL ENTITY		
AMENDMENT	03/07/2012	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	* 41	Minus	** 45	=	0	OR	X \$60=	0
	Independent <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	* 4	Minus	***4	=	0	OR	X \$250=	0
<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>									
<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>							OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	0

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II					OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY				
(Column 1)		(Column 2)	(Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY		OR	SMALL ENTITY		
AMENDMENT		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	*	Minus	**	=		OR	X \$ =	
	Independent <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	*	Minus	***	=		OR	X \$ =	
<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>									
<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>							OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
 *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

Legal Instrument Examiner:
/SHEILA CHAPMAN/

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**
 If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.



NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

7590 05/10/2012
Michael de Angeli
34 Court Street
Jamestown, RI 02835

EXAMINER
SHAHI, MUHAMMAD
ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER

3667

DATE MAILED: 05/10/2012

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO.

13/065,704 03/29/2011 Alex J. Severinsky PAICE201.DIV.10 6039

TITLE OF INVENTION: HYBRID VEHICLES

Table with 7 columns: APPLN. TYPE, SMALL ENTITY, ISSUE FEE DUE, PUBLICATION FEE DUE, PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE, TOTAL FEE(S) DUE, DATE DUE

nonprovisional NO \$1740 \$300 \$0 \$2040 08/10/2012

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above.

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:

A. If the status is the same, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.

B. If the status above is to be removed, check box 5b on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and twice the amount of the ISSUE FEE shown above, or

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:

A. Pay TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above, or

B. If applicant claimed SMALL ENTITY status before, or is now claiming SMALL ENTITY status, check box 5a on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and 1/2 the ISSUE FEE shown above.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

**Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
 Commissioner for Patents
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 or Fax (571)-273-2885**

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

7590 05/10/2012
 Michael de Angeli
 34 Court Street
 Jamestown, RI 02835

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

(Depositor's name)
(Signature)
(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
13/065,704	03/29/2011	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV.10	6039

TITLE OF INVENTION: HYBRID VEHICLES

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	\$1740	\$300	\$0	\$2040	08/10/2012

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
SHAFI, MUHAMMAD	3667	701-022000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.

"Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list

(1) the names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively, 1 _____

(2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed. 2 _____

3 _____

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE _____ (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY) _____

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent): Individual Corporation or other private group entity Government

4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:

Issue Fee

Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)

Advance Order - # of Copies _____

4b. Payment of Fee(s): (Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)

A check is enclosed.

Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number _____ (enclose an extra copy of this form).

5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)

a. Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27. b. Applicant is no longer claiming SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27(g)(2).

NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) will not be accepted from anyone other than the applicant; a registered attorney or agent; or the assignee or other party in interest as shown by the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Authorized Signature _____ Date _____

Typed or printed name _____ Registration No. _____

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO.
13/065,704 03/29/2011 Alex J. Severinsky PAICE201.DIV.10 6039

7590
Michael de Angeli
34 Court Street
Jamestown, RI 02835

05/10/2012

EXAMINER

SHAFL, MUHAMMAD

ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER

3667

DATE MAILED: 05/10/2012

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)

(application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment to date is 0 day(s). If the issue fee is paid on the date that is three months after the mailing date of this notice and the patent issues on the Tuesday before the date that is 28 weeks (six and a half months) after the mailing date of this notice, the Patent Term Adjustment will be 0 day(s).

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (http://pair.uspto.gov).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Examiner-Initiated Interview Summary	Application No. 13/065,704	Applicant(s) SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

- (1) MUHAMMAD SHAFI. (3) _____.
- (2) Atty. Michael de Angeli (Reg. 27869). (4) _____.

Date of Interview: 11 April 2012.

Type: Telephonic Video Conference
 Personal [copy given to: applicant applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: Yes No.
If Yes, brief description: _____.

Issues Discussed 101 112 102 103 Others
(For each of the checked box(es) above, please describe below the issue and detailed description of the discussion)

Claim(s) discussed: Yes.

Identification of prior art discussed: No.

Substance of Interview

(For each issue discussed, provide a detailed description and indicate if agreement was reached. Some topics may include: identification or clarification of a reference or a portion thereof, claim interpretation, proposed amendments, arguments of any applied references etc...)

Examiner called Atty. Michael de Angeli and offered examiner's amendment to claims. Atty. De Angeli indicated that he would consult his client then he would get back with USPTO. Later on Atty. De Angeli called Office and agreed to the examiner's amendment to claims.

Applicant recordation instructions: It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of interview.

Examiner recordation instructions: Examiners must summarize the substance of any interview of record. A complete and proper recordation of the substance of an interview should include the items listed in MPEP 713.04 for complete and proper recordation including the identification of the general thrust of each argument or issue discussed, a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed regarding patentability and the general results or outcome of the interview, to include an indication as to whether or not agreement was reached on the issues raised.

Attachment

/M. S./
Examiner, Art Unit 3667

Notice of Allowability

Application No.

13/065,704

Examiner

MUHAMMAD SHAFI

Applicant(s)

SEVERINSKY ET AL.

Art Unit

3667

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

- 1. This communication is responsive to 03/05/2012.
- 2. An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on ____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.
- 3. The allowed claim(s) is/are 17,19-23,25-34,36-40,42-47,49-51 and 53-61.
- 4. Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
 - a) All b) Some* c) None of the:
 - 1. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
 - 2. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. ____ .
 - 3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

* Certified copies not received: ____.

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.

THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.

- 5. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be submitted. Note the attached EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF INFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives reason(s) why the oath or declaration is deficient.
 - 6. CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.
 - (a) including changes required by the Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) attached
 - 1) hereto or 2) to Paper No./Mail Date ____.
 - (b) including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date ____.
- Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).**
- 7. DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

Attachment(s)

- 1. Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
- 2. Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
- 3. Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08), Paper No./Mail Date 12/19/2011
- 4. Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit of Biological Material
- 5. Notice of Informal Patent Application
- 6. Interview Summary (PTO-413), Paper No./Mail Date 04/11/2012 .
- 7. Examiner's Amendment/Comment
- 8. Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance
- 9. Other See Below.

/M. S./
Examiner, Art Unit 3667

NPL submitted on 12/19/2011 have been considered.

Allowance

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 112 Second Paragraph

1. Applicant's amendments with respect to claims 19, 29, 30,42 and 53 and cancellation of claims 18,41 and 52 are sufficient to overcome Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 112 Second Paragraph set forth in the previous Office Action. The examiner withdraws the rejections.

EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT

2. An examiner's amendment to the record appears below. Should the changes and/or additions be unacceptable to applicant, an amendment may be filed as provided by 37 CFR 1.312. To ensure consideration of such an amendment, it **MUST** be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee.

Authorization for this examiner's amendment was given in a telephone interview with Atty. Michael de Angeli (Reg. 27869) on 04/11/2012. The application has been amended as follows:

In **Claim 17, line 14** the word, " ratio. " has been replaced by the following phrase –ratio; and comprising the further steps of:

operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO;
operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO;

Art Unit: 3667

and operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP. --.

In **Claim 25, line 1**, the word, "claim 24" has been changed to --claim 17--.

In **Claim 29, line 14** the word, " ratio. " has been replaced by the following phrase --ratio; and comprising the further steps of :

operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO; operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; and operating the at least one electric motor to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP. --.

In **Claim 36, line 1**, the word, "claim 35" has been changed to --claim 29--.

In **Claim 37, line 1**, the word, "claim 35" has been changed to --claim 29--.

In **Claim 40, line 20** the word, " ratio. " has been replaced by the following phrase --ratio; and operating the engine to charge the battery responsive to the state of charge of the battery, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to SP to propel the hybrid vehicle, to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, or both, and wherein torque produced by the engine equal to RL is used to

Art Unit: 3667

propel the hybrid vehicle, and torque produced by the engine in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery. --.

3. Claims **24, 35 and 48** have been **cancelled**.

Allowable Subject Matter

4. Remaining Claims **17, 19-23, 25-34, 36-40, 42-47, 49-51, 53-61** are allowed.

REASONS FOR ALLOWANCE

5. The prior art of records fail to teach, a method for controlling a hybrid vehicle comprising a controller, employing said controller to control the engine such that a rate of increase of output torque of the engine is limited to less than said inherent maximum rate of increase of output torque, and wherein said step of controlling the engine such that the rate of increase of output torque of the engine is limited is performed such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs at a substantially stoichiometric ratio; and comprising the further steps of: operating said internal combustion engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is between a setpoint SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above SP, and wherein SP is substantially less than MTO; operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is more than MTO; and operating the at least one electric motor to

Art Unit: 3667

provide torque to the hybrid vehicle when the torque required to operate the hybrid vehicle is less than SP.

Any comments considered necessary by applicant must be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee and, to avoid processing delays, should preferably accompany the issue fee. Such submissions should be clearly labeled "Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance."

Conclusion

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to MUHAMMAD SHAFI whose telephone number is (571)270-5741. The examiner can normally be reached on M-F 8:30 AM -5:00 PM.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, James Trammell can be reached on (571)-272-6712. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Art Unit: 3667

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/ms/
Examiner
Art Unit 3667

/James P Trammell/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3667

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. 13/065,704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
*	A US-5,343,970	09-1994	Severinsky, Alex J.	180/65.25
*	B US-5,806,617	09-1998	Yamaguchi, Kozo	180/65.235
*	C US-5,483,939	01-1996	Kamura et al.	123/492
*	D US-5,695,722	12-1997	Myers et al.	422/174
	E US-			
	F US-			
	G US-			
	H US-			
	I US-			
	J US-			
	K US-			
	L US-			
	M US-			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N				
	O				
	P				
	Q				
	R				
	S				
	T				

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)				
	U				
	V				
	W				
	X				

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.



PTO/SB/08b (07-09)
 Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.


INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)	Complete if Known	
	Application Number	13/065,704
	Filing Date	March 29, 2011
	First Named Inventor	Severinsky
	Art Unit	3667
	Examiner Name	Shafi
Sheet 1 of 1	Attorney Docket Number	PAICE201.DIV.10

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS			
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
		SUTHERLAND, A State Language for the Sequencing in a Hybrid Electric Vehicle, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec., Vol. 1E-30, No. 4, 318-322 (1983)	
		SOMUAH, A Microcomputer-Controlled Powertrain for a Hybrid Vehicle, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec., Vol. 1E-30, No. 2, 126-131 (1983)	
		BOSE, A Microcomputer-Based Propulsion Conro System of a Hybrid Electric Vehicle, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec., Vol. 1E-31, No. 1, 61-68 (1983)	

Examiner Signature	/Muhammad Shafi/	Date Considered	04/28/2012
--------------------	------------------	-----------------	------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.
¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.
 This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form call 1-800-PTO-9109 (1-800-786-9199) and select option 2.

Search Notes 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
701	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
180	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
340	988-996	11/23/2011	ms
123	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
60	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
903	whole class	11/23/2011	ms
701	whole class	04/28/2012	ms
180	whole class	04/28/2012	ms
340	988-996	04/28/2012	ms
123	whole class	04/28/2012	ms
60	whole class	04/28/2012	ms
903	whole class	04/28/2012	ms

SEARCH NOTES		
Search Notes	Date	Examiner
East Search	11/23/2011	ms
Inventor Search	11/23/2011	ms
PLUS Search	11/23/2011	ms
Text Search	11/23/2011	ms
Updated EastS earch	04/28/2012	ms
Updated Inventor Search	04/28/2012	ms
Uodated TextS earch	04/28/2012	ms
Consulted SPE James Trammell regarding allowable subject matter	04/24/2012	ms

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
	PG PUB text Search ----- See Interference Search Printout	04/28/2012	ms

--	--

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L1	110781	"180"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38
L2	72210	"701"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38
L3	7341	340/988-996.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38
L4	226803	"123"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38
L5	127063	"60"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38
L6	9669	"903"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38
L7	177928	1 or 2 or 3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:57
L8	510988	4 or 5 or 6 or 7	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:38

			USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			12:57
L9	510988	7 or 8	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:58
L10	11	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 (maximum adj output)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:58
L11	1	9 and 10	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:58
L12	44	((severinsky) near2 (alex)).in.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:59
L13	28	((louckes) near2 (theodore)).in.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:59
L14	46	12 or 13	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:59
L15	0	10 and 14	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 12:59
S1	44	((severinsky) near2 (alex)).in.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; WENT;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:22

S2	28	((louckes) near2 (theodore)).in.	IBM_TDB US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:22
S3	46	S1 or S2	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:22
S4	109604	"180"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:25
S5	69384	"701"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S6	7188	340/988-996.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S7	225255	"123"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S8	125235	"60"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:26
S9	9385	"903"/\$.cls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S10	174176	S4 or S5 or S6	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27

			EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S11	350102	S7 or S8 or S9	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S12	504210	S10 or S11	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 09:27
S13	1273	fuel near2 (stoichiometr\$4 adj ratio)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S14	109604	"180"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S15	69384	"701"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S16	7188	340/988-996.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S17	225255	"123"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S18	125235	"60"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S19	9385	"903"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19

			USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S20	174176	S14 or S15 or S16	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S21	350102	S17 or S18 or S19	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S22	504210	S20 or S21	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S23	632	S22 and S13	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:19
S24	21	(road adj load) near3 (maximum adj torque adj output)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:20
S25	0	S23 and S24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:20
S26	21	S22 and S24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:20
S27	21	S22 and S24	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:21

S28	21	S24 and S27	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:23
S29	0	S13 and S27	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 12:23
S30	305	parallel adj hybrid adj vehicle	USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/23 13:32
S31	1927	engine and motor and generator and (inverter or charger) and microprocessor and battery	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 13:33
S32	940	S22 and S31	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 13:34
S33	21	S24 and S32	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 13:34
S34	39	S30 and S31	USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/23 13:35
S35	1	("5343970").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/23 17:35
S36	250	motor near3 (maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:13
S37	3	motor near3 (maximum adj output adj torque) near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:13
S38	0	motor near3 provid\$4 near3(maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; JPO;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:16

			DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S39	250	motor near3(maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:16
S40	14	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 (maximum adj output adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:17
S41	1	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 (maximum adj output adj torque) near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:19
S42	0	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 (equal adj torque) near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:20
S43	0	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 equal near3 (engine adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:21
S44	273	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:21
S45	2	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 equal with engine with torque	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/23 19:22
S46	100	engine near2 heat near2 (fuel adj supply)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 08:59
S47	109635	"180"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; CR;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00

			FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			
S48	69478	"701"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S49	7188	340/988-996.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S50	225285	"123"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S51	125278	"60"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S52	9398	"903"/\$.ccls.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S53	174290	S47 or S48 or S49	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S54	350184	S50 or S51 or S52	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S55	504387	S53 or S54	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:00
S56	52	S55 and S46	GPUB;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25

			USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB			09:00
S57	133	heat\$3 near2 engine near2 (fuel adj supply)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:01
S58	75	S55 and S57	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:01
S59	0	(hybrid adj vehicle) near2 (catalytic adj converter) near2 heater	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:10
S60	9	(vehide) near2 (catalytic adj converter) near2 heater	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 09:11
S61	0	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near2 (fuel adj supply)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:22
S62	222	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:22
S63	0	vehicle near (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:23
S64	15	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near3 fuel	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; WENT;	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:23

S65	16	(heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near3 start	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:23
S66	0	controller near3 (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before) near3 start	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:31
S67	1	controller near3 (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 start	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:31
S68	0	module near2 (heat\$4 adj engine) near2 (prior or before)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:32
S69	11	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 (maximum adj output)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:48
S70	2	motor near3 produc\$4 near2 torque near3 equal near3 (engine adj torque)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	ADJ	OFF	2011/11/25 10:52
S71	18	("20010049570" "20020055411" "20020071383" "20020079147" "20020112901" "20040055799" "5806617" "5823281" "6233508" "6348771" "6440036" "6522024").PN. OR ("6883626").URPN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2011/11/25 10:52
S72	0	S70 and S71	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2011/11/25 10:53
S73	50	((("4793599") or ("6002979") or ("4967610") or ("6079258") or ("6086510") or ("6134488") or ("4266628") or ("4298151") or ("4402237") or ("4414946") or ("4531489") or ("4532901") or ("4618041") or ("4625825") or ("4775939") or ("4815263") ~ ("4846451") or ("4869474"))	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2011/11/25 14:30


	("4911211") or ("4945977") or ("4989149") or ("5242273") or ("5279384") or ("5406483") or ("5526261") or ("5528086") or ("5539377") or ("5562085") or ("5634339") or ("5660149") or ("5663880") or ("5665026") or ("5686773") or ("5689142") or ("5838251") or ("5848381") or ("5845612") or ("5858942") or ("5873250") or ("5874785") or ("5896554") or ("5905432") or ("5957663") or ("5970925") or ("5976055") or ("6006146") or ("6026921") or ("6065565") or ("6073507") or ("6188943")).PN.			
--	--	--	--	--

EAST Search History (Interference)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L16	0	(inherent near3 maximum near3 rate near3 torque).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; UPAD	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 13:00
L17	12	(maximum near3 rate near3 increas\$4 near3 torque).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; UPAD	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 13:00
L18	1	(maximum near3 rate near3 increas\$4 near3 torque near3 vehicle).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; UPAD	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 13:01
L19	0	(maximum near3 rate near3 increas\$4 near3 torque near3 (hybrid adj vehicle)).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; UPAD	ADJ	OFF	2012/04/28 13:02

4/ 28/ 2012 1:02:49 PM

C:\Users\mshafi\Documents\EAST\Workspaces\13065704.wsp

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

✓	Rejected
=	Allowed


-	Cancelled
÷	Restricted

N	Non-Elected
I	Interference

A	Appeal
O	Objected

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
 CPA
 T.D.
 R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE							
Final	Original	06/27/2011	11/25/2011	04/28/2012					
	1	÷	-	-					
	2	÷	-	-					
	3	÷	-	-					
	4	÷	-	-					
	5	÷	-	-					
	6	÷	-	-					
	7	÷	-	-					
	8	÷	-	-					
	9	÷	-	-					
	10	÷	-	-					
	11	÷	-	-					
	12	÷	-	-					
	13	÷	-	-					
	14	÷	-	-					
	15	÷	-	-					
	16	÷	-	-					
	17		✓	=					
	18		✓	-					
	19		✓	=					
	20		✓	=					
	21		✓	=					
	22		✓	=					
	23		✓	=					
	24		✓	-					
	25		✓	=					
	26		✓	=					
	27		✓	=					
	28		✓	=					
	29		✓	=					
	30		✓	=					
	31		✓	=					
	32		✓	=					
	33		✓	=					
	34		✓	=					
	35		✓	-					
	36		✓	=					

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

✓	Rejected
=	Allowed


-	Cancelled
÷	Restricted

N	Non-Elected
I	Interference

A	Appeal
O	Objected

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
 CPA
 T.D.
 R.1.47

CLAIM		DATE							
Final	Original	06/27/2011	11/25/2011	04/28/2012					
	37		✓	=					
	38		✓	=					
	39		✓	=					
	40		✓	=					
	41		✓	-					
	42		✓	=					
	43		✓	=					
	44		✓	=					
	45		✓	=					
	46		✓	=					
	47		✓	=					
	48		✓	-					
	49		✓	=					
	50		✓	=					
	51		✓	=					
	52		✓	-					
	53		✓	=					
	54		✓	=					
	55		✓	=					
	56		✓	=					
	57		✓	=					
	58		✓	=					
	59		✓	=					
	60		✓	=					
	61		✓	=					

Issue Classification 	Application/Control No. 13065704	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner MUHAMMAD SHAFI	Art Unit 3667

ORIGINAL						INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION												
CLASS		SUBCLASS				CLAIMED					NON-CLAIMED							
701		22				G	0	5	D	3 / 00 (2006.01.01)								
CROSS REFERENCE(S)						G	0	5	D	1 / 00 (2006.01.01)								
						B	6	0	K	6 / 20 (2007.10.01)								
CLASS	SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)																	
701	84																	
180	65.21																	

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant CPA T.D. R.1.47

Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original
1	17	17	36	33	55										
2	19	18	37	34	56										
3	20	19	38	35	57										
4	21	20	39	36	58										
5	22	21	40	37	59										
6	23	22	42	38	60										
7	25	23	43	39	61										
8	26	24	44												
9	27	25	45												
10	28	26	46												
11	29	27	47												
12	30	28	49												
13	31	29	50												
14	32	30	51												
15	33	31	53												
16	34	32	54												

/MUHAMMAD SHAFI/ Examiner.Art Unit 3667 (Assistant Examiner)	04/12/2012 (Date)	Total Claims Allowed: 39	
/JAMES TRAMMELL/ Supervisory Patent Examiner.Art Unit 3667 (Primary Examiner)	05/07/2012 (Date)	O.G. Print Claim(s) 17	O.G. Print Figure 12

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

THW

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: **Mail** Mail Stop **ISSUE FEE**
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 or **Fax** (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the **ISSUE FEE** and **PUBLICATION FEE** (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

7590 05/10/2012
 Michael de Angeli
 34 Court Street
 Jamestown, RI 02835



Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop **ISSUE FEE** address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

Michael de Angeli	(Depositor's name)
<i>[Signature]</i>	(Signature)
5/10/12	(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
13/065,704	03/29/2011	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV.10	6039

TITLE OF INVENTION: HYBRID VEHICLES

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	\$1740	\$300	\$0	\$2040	08/10/2012

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
SHAFI, MUHAMMAD	3667	701-022000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.

"Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. Use of a Customer Number is required.

2. For printing on the patent front page, list

(1) the names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively, 1- Michael de Angeli

(2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed. 2- _____

3- _____

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE: PAICE LLC
 The Abell Foundation, Inc.

(B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)
 Bonita Springs, FL
 Baltimore, MD (part ownership interest)

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent): Individual Corporation or other private group entity Government

4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:

Issue Fee

Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)

Advance Order - # of Copies 10

4b. Payment of Fee(s): (Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)

A check is enclosed.

Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number _____ (enclose an extra copy of this form).

5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)

a. Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27. b. Applicant is no longer claiming SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27(g)(2).

NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) will not be accepted from anyone other than the applicant; a registered attorney or agent; or the assignee or other party in interest as shown by the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Authorized Signature: *[Signature]* Date: 05/16/2012
 Typed or printed name: Michael de Angeli
 Registration No. 27,869

01 FC:1501	1740.00 OP
02 FC:1504	300.00 OP
03 FC:8001	30.00 OP

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.



APPLICATION NO.	ISSUE DATE	PATENT NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
13/065,704	07/03/2012	8214097	PAICE201.DIV.10	6039

7590
Michael de Angeli
34 Court Street
Jamestown, RI 02835

06/13/2012

ISSUE NOTIFICATION

The projected patent number and issue date are specified above.

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b) (application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment is 0 day(s). Any patent to issue from the above-identified application will include an indication of the adjustment on the front page.

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (<http://pair.uspto.gov>).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Application Assistance Unit (AAU) of the Office of Data Management (ODM) at (571)-272-4200.

APPLICANT(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site <http://pair.uspto.gov> for additional applicants):

Alex J. Severinsky, Washington, DC;
Theodore Louckes, Holly, MI, Deceased;